

Help

Thank you very much for purchasing this product.

- To ensure correct and safe usage with a full understanding of this product's performance, please be sure to read through this manual completely.
- Unauthorized copying or transferal, in whole or in part, of this manual is prohibited.
- The specifications of this product and the contents of this operation manual are subject to change without notice.
- The operation manual and the product have been prepared and tested as much as possible. If you find any misprints or errors, please inform us.
- Roland DG Corporation assumes no responsibility for any direct or indirect loss or damage that may occur through use of this product, regardless of any failure to perform on the part of this product.
- Roland DG Corporation assumes no responsibility for any direct or indirect loss or damage that may occur with respect to any article made using this product.

Company names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

R24-250227

Copyright © 2019-2025 Roland DG Corporation

FA04048

https://www.rolanddg.com/

Roland DG Corporation

Contents

Basic Knowledge of VersaWorks 8

Introduction 9
VersaWorks 10
What Is VersaWorks? 10
VersaWorks Usage Environment 11

Window Layout 12
Top Menu 13
1. Menu bar 14
2. Setting area 15
3. Job area 16
About [**Queue Properties**] and [**Job Settings**] 17
Job Assistant Window 23
4. Preview Area 24
5. Layout area 25
6. Status bar 26

Initial Settings 27
Checking before Output 28
Checking the Printer Connection and Status 28
Preferences 30
Settings to Configure First 30
Settings to Configure Once You are Experienced 31

Update 40
Setting and Performing Updates 41
Using the Latest Version of VersaWorks 42
Performing Updates According to Their Details 43
Configuring Update Settings 45
Checking the Latest Information 47
Checking the Version Information 47

Backing Up Data 48
Saving VersaWorks Settings and Jobs for Later Use 49
Saving Backup Data 49
Loading Backup Data 50

Initialization 51
Initializing VersaWorks 52
Step 1: Initializing the Job and Print Properties 52
Step 2: Initializing All VersaWorks Settings 53
Step 3: Deleting Operation Data from before Startup Failed 54

License 55
Software License 56

Basic Operations 57

Test Print 58
Test Printing from VersaWorks 59

Output Method 60
Basic Operations for Output 61
Step 1: Add Print Data to the Job List 61

Step 2: Change the Print Settings of the Job....64
Step 3: Outputting....66
Configuring the Queue Folder....68
Performing Only Processing by the RIP....70
Outputting from Other Computers....71
Outputting from the Windows Client....72
Outputting from the Mac Client....76
Outputting from Design Software....79
Windows 11, 10....79
Mac OS 10.X....80
Output Using a Hot Folder....81
Configuring Settings Using a Hot Folder....81

Other Basic Operations....82
Canceling Processing by the RIP and Printing....83
Canceling Processing by the RIP and Printing in Progress....83
Previewing Print Data....84
Switching between Pages in the Preview Display....85
Switching the Layout Area View on the [**Job Settings**] Window....86
Deleting Jobs and Intermediate Files....87
Deleting Jobs....87
Deleting the Intermediate Files of a Job....87
Searching for Jobs....88
Checking and Saving the Job Log Information....89
View the Job Log Information....89
Save the Job Log Information....91

Output Settings....92

Alignment and Control Settings....93
Layout Settings....94
Set the size of the material....94
Scaling Jobs for Printing....95
Setting the Printing Position....96
Setting the Number of Copies to Print....97
Setting the Spacing from the Adjacent Image....98
Mirroring the Image....100
Rotating the Image....101
Adjusting the Printing Position in the Layout Area....102
Printer Control Settings....104
Cutting the Media after Output....104
Setting the Space to the Next Printing Start Location....105
Determining How to Alleviate Horizontal Bands: [**Feed Calibration Controls**]....106
Using Media That Wrinkles Easily/Does Not Move Smoothly: [**Vacuum Power**]....107
Setting the Drying Time after Printing....108
Adjusting Print Head Height to Match Media Thickness....109
Setting the Heater/Dryer Temperature....110
Correcting the Dimensions in the Printing Results....111
Reducing the UV Lamp Illumination Intensity....112
Performing Only UV Lamp Illumination....113
Adding Jobs That Perform Only UV Lamp Illumination after Printing....114
Limit the print heads used for printing: [**Nozzle Mask**]....115

Quality/Output Color Settings....117
Setting the Printing Quality....118
Setting the Halftone....118
Selecting the Interpolation Used for Scaling....119
Setting the Direction of the Print Head....120

Setting the Print Head Speed 121
Setting the Optimizer Ink Amount 122
Adjusting the Output Colors 123
Visually Selecting the Color Settings: [**Quick Setup**] 123
Selecting the Color Setting from the List 125
Adjusting the Color Saturation, Contrast, and Brightness of the Entire Image 127
Adjusting the Tone Curve 128
Customizing the Color Settings 131
Matching Different Printer Output Colors 134
Obtaining a Stable Output Color 136

Efficient Ways to Output Data 144

Reducing Wasted Time to Improve Efficiency 145
Reducing the Amount of Media Used 146
Creating a Nested Job from the Selected Jobs 146
Automatically Creating a Nested Job 147
Automating Processing by the RIP and Printing 149
Processing a Job by the RIP or Printing a Job Automatically 149
Setting Processing after Printing Is Completed 150
Printing while Processing by the RIP 151
Outputting Multiple Jobs at Once 152
Changing the Order in Which Jobs Are Output when Printing 153
Adding a Name to a Queue Folder 154

Improving Efficiency through Reuse 155
Saving and Reusing Printed Jobs 156
Saving a VW Job File 156
Printing Using a VW Job File 158
Saving a VW Job + Source Data File 159
Printing Using a VW Job + Source Data File 160
Saving a PRT Native File 161
Printing Using a PRT Native File 162
Reusing Queue Folder Settings 163
Step 1: Saving Printing Settings 163
Step 2: Loading Files to Use Printing Settings with Queue Folders 164
Overwriting Saved Printing Settings Files 165
Deleting Printing Settings Files 166
Reusing Job Settings 167
Using Job Printing Settings with Other Jobs 168
Saving the Printing Settings of the Job 169
Loading Files to Use Printing Settings with Other Jobs 170
Duplicating Jobs 171

Operating Special Printing Features 172

Printing with Added Marks and Information 173
Adding Trim Marks or Margin Marks 174
Printing Job Information 175
Adding an Overlap Width for Tiled Printing 176

Specifying the Printing Area, Print Count, and Overprinting Count When Printing 178
Printing the Selected Area of the Image: [**Clip Image**] 179
Maintaining the Clipped Position 181
Tiling an Image 183
Printing a Single Image Side by Side: [**Step & Repeat**] 186
Performing Overprinting: [**Overprint**] 188

Printing for Quality and Color Comparisons 189
Printing While Changing Settings in Small Increments: [**Variation Job**] 190
Step 1: Generate a Variation Job 191
Step 2: Adjust the Printing Size and Print 194
Step 3: Evaluate Variation Printing for Application to a Job 195

Printing Specific Layers 196
Printing Specific Layers of the Print Data 197
Step 1: Creating Print Data 198
Step 2: Printing Specific Layers 199

Printing That Combines Data Files and Templates: [**Variable Data**] 200
About Variable Printing 201
Step 1: Create a Template 201
Step 2: Creating a Data File 203
Step 3: Load the Files Required for Variable Printing 205
Step 4: Configure the Variable Printing Settings 207
Step 5: Performing Printing 211
Editing a Data File 212
Creating, Editing, and Exporting a Data File 213

Printing Jobs Layered on Top of Each Other 215
Printing Multiple Jobs Layered on Top of Each Other: [**Layered Job**] 216
1. Overlapping Multiple Jobs to Create a Single Job 216
2. A: Performing Pullback Printing 217
2. B: Performing One Pass Multilayer Printing 218
Composing TIFF Image Print Data: [**Compose Job**] 219
Step 1: Preparing CMYK and Grayscale Print Data 219
Step 2: Composing CMYK Print Data and Grayscale Print Data 220

Printing Using the Rotary Axis Unit 221
Printing on a Cylindrical Object 222

Using Spot Colors and Special Colors 223

Using Spot Colors 224
About Spot Colors 225
Printing with Spot Colors 226
Step 1: Select the Spot Color 226
Step 2: Create Print Data with Illustration Software 227
Step 3: Performing Printing 228
Printing Using the Roland Color System Library 230
Step 1: Printing a Color Chart 230
Step 2: Registering Roland Color System Library Colors in Illustration Software 233
Step 3: Create Print Data with Illustration Software 235
Step 4: Performing Printing 236
Printing Using White Ink/Gloss Ink/Primer/Metallic Silver Ink 237
Step 1: Registering a Spot Color in Illustration Software 237
Step 2: Create Print Data with Illustration Software 240
Step 3: Perform Printing 241
Using a Spot Color Library 242
Creating a Spot Color Library 242
Saving the Spot Color Library as a File 244
Importing a Saved Spot Color Library 245
Deleting a Spot Color Library 246
Replicating and Editing a Spot Color Library 247
Adjusting the Output Color of a Spot Color: [**Nearest Color Finder**] 248
Step 1: Print the Spot Color Chart 248

Step 2: Select and Apply the Desired Color 250
Managing the [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] 251
Readjusting the Adjustment Results in [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] 252
Using [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] in Other Computers 253
Other Spot Color Functions 254
Replacing or Fine-tuning the Output Color of a Spot Color 254
Assigning a Color from Another Spot Color Library to a Newly Created Spot Color Library 256
Assigning White/Metallic Silver/Gloss/Primer to a Spot Color in Existing Print Data 258
Importing Spot Colors and Creating a Spot Color Library 260
Generation of Spot Color Plates (White, Gloss, Primer) 261
Special Color Plate Generation with VersaWorks 261
Spot Color Plate Generation with Job Assistant 264
Adjusting the Position and Size of Spot Color Plates 269
Correcting the Position of Spot Color Plates 269
Correcting the Size of Spot Color Plates 271

Using Special Colors 273
About Special Colors 274
Printing with Special Colors 275
Step 1: Configure a Special Color 275
Step 2: Performing Printing 277
Saving the Special Color Library as a File 278
Replicating and Editing the Special Color Library 279
Deleting a Special Color Library 280
Registering a Color by Measuring with an Instrument 281
Fine-tuning the Output Color of a Special Color 282

Cutting Settings 284

Creating the Cutting Data 285
Creating with Illustration Software 286
Adobe Illustrator 286
CorelDRAW 288
Creating with Job Assistant 290
Create a Cutting Line From Shapes Included in the Print Data 290
Create a Cutting Line in an Ellipse or Rectangular Shape 294
Replacing Shapes Contained in Print Data with Cutting Lines 296
Editing Cutting Lines 299
Changing the Color of the Cutting Line 303

Cutting Output 304
Performing Just Cutting 305
Performing Printing and Cutting Continuously 307
Print, Laminate, and Cut: Cutting with Crop Marks 309
Step 1: Print with crop marks 309
Step 2: Cut the Processed Media 311
Applying Crop Marks Individually to Multiple Images 313
Performing Printing after Cutting 314
Performing Perforated Cutting at Image Boundaries 317
Configuring the Cutting Conditions 319
Step 1: Perform Test Cutting 319
Step 2: Configuring the Cutting Conditions 321

Managing Media Information 322

Creating New Media 323
Registering New Media 324

Step 1: Create New Media 324
Step 2: Prepare to Create a Profile 325
Step 3: Create a Profile 328
Step 4: Register a Profile 329
Step 5: Configure the Default Printer Control Settings 330
Step 6: Finalize the Registration of the New Media 332

Using Existing Media 333
Customizing Media 334
Using Media [**Color Settings**] 335
Saving the Media File 337
Using an Existing Media File 338
Importing Media Files into VersaWorks 338
Loading Saved Media Files 339
Deleting the Media 340

Appendix 341

Function List 342
Menu Bar List 343
[**File**] 343
[**Edit**] 344
[**View**] 348
[**Job**] 349
[**Printer**] 351
[**Media**] 352
[**Help**] 353
[**Job Settings**] List 354
[**Layout**] 354
[**Quality**] 356
[**Color Adjustment**] 362
[**File Format**] 363
[**Mark**] 365
[**Printer Controls**] 366
[**Cut Controls**] 369
[**Job Management**] 371
[**Clip and Tile**] 373
[**Variable Data**] 375
[**Special Color**] 377
[**Customize**] 378

Frequently Asked Questions 379
Unintended Colors Are Printed 380
Colors Are Too Light or Too Dark 381
Making Black Darker 382
Adding White Plates to CMYK Data in VersaWorks 383
Layering the Output of Primer, White Ink, and CMYK Ink 386
Different Colors Printed for Queue A and Queue B 387
Colors Changing after a Reinstallation 388
Registering Swatches for Spot Colors 389
Adjusting the Ink Limit 390
Setting a Margin around the Print Data 391
Increasing the Printing Speed While Maintaining Quality 392
Ink Consumption Not Displayed in the Job Log 393
Different Monitor Colors and Printed Colors 394
Saving Printing Settings 395
Performing Only Processing by the RIP for a Job 396

Changing the Memory Usage Setting 397
Printing a Single Job Multiple Times 398
Preventing Print Data from being Tiled 399
Checking Whether the Job Assistant Function Is Installed 400
Cutting All Lines 401
Cutting the Job Data Boundaries 402
Checking the Printer Connection 403
Connecting Multiple Printers 404
    LAN Connection 404
    USB Connection 406

Basic Knowledge of Versa-Works

Introduction

VersaWorks 10
What Is VersaWorks? 10
VersaWorks Usage Environment 11

VersaWorks

What Is VersaWorks?

VersaWorks is advanced RIP software that provides the user with the following advantages.

- Diverse output functions

  Tiled output, the automatic nesting function (which automatically rearranges multiple jobs to minimize the amount of used media), and various other functions are provided for improved productivity.

  You can connect up to four printers to a single computer.

- Support for spot color printing

  It converts the colors registered in spot color libraries into process colors for printing.

  The spot color libraries contain the Roland DG original spot color library [**Roland Color System Library**], **PANTONE**, and other such libraries to enable fast and accurate reproduction of spot color output, which has been seen as difficult until now. You can also create a new spot color library if necessary.

- Spot color plate generation and correction function

  White, gloss, and primer spot color plates can be generated automatically.

  When adding a spot color to print data where a white, gloss, or primer spot color was not specified with the design software, it is not necessary to return to the design software and set the spot color. Just load the print data into VersaWorks and specify the area where the spot color plate will be generated to easily create the required data. A size correction function is also provided, allowing users to quickly and easily create their desired spot color data even on their first try.

- Cutting function

  Printing and cutting machines are also supported. This function enables a wide variety of settings that combine printing and cutting. You can also use the printing and cutting machine as a cutting machine.

- Function for adding cutting lines to the printing job

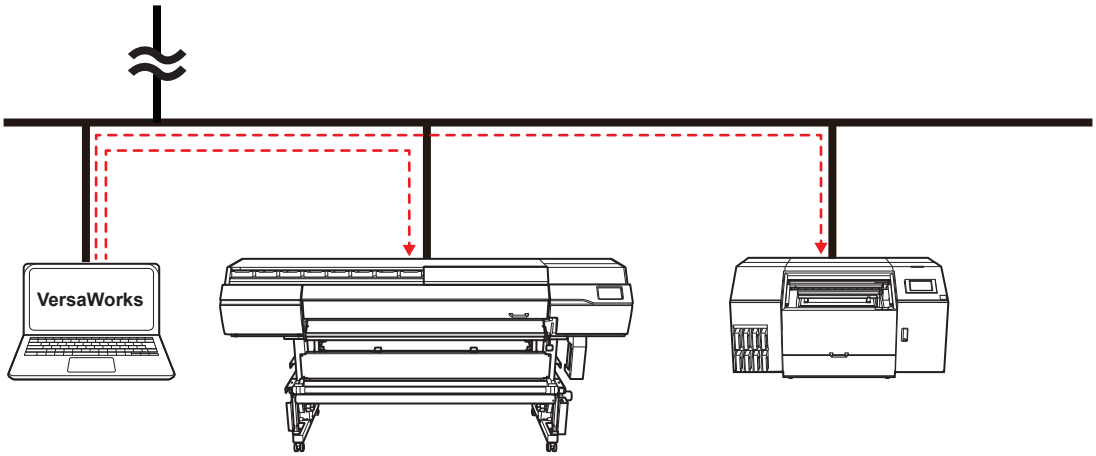
  With VersaWorks, outline lines for cutting can be added automatically to design data in PDF format (using the Job Assistant function). There is no need to return to the design software, minimizing the time required for printing and cutting output.

- Software automatic update

  It can use [**Roland@NET**] to automatically update the software.

VersaWorks Usage Environment

Via the network, connect the printer and the computer on which VersaWorks is installed, process the created print data by the RIP in VersaWorks (convert this data into data suitable for printing), and then output the data.

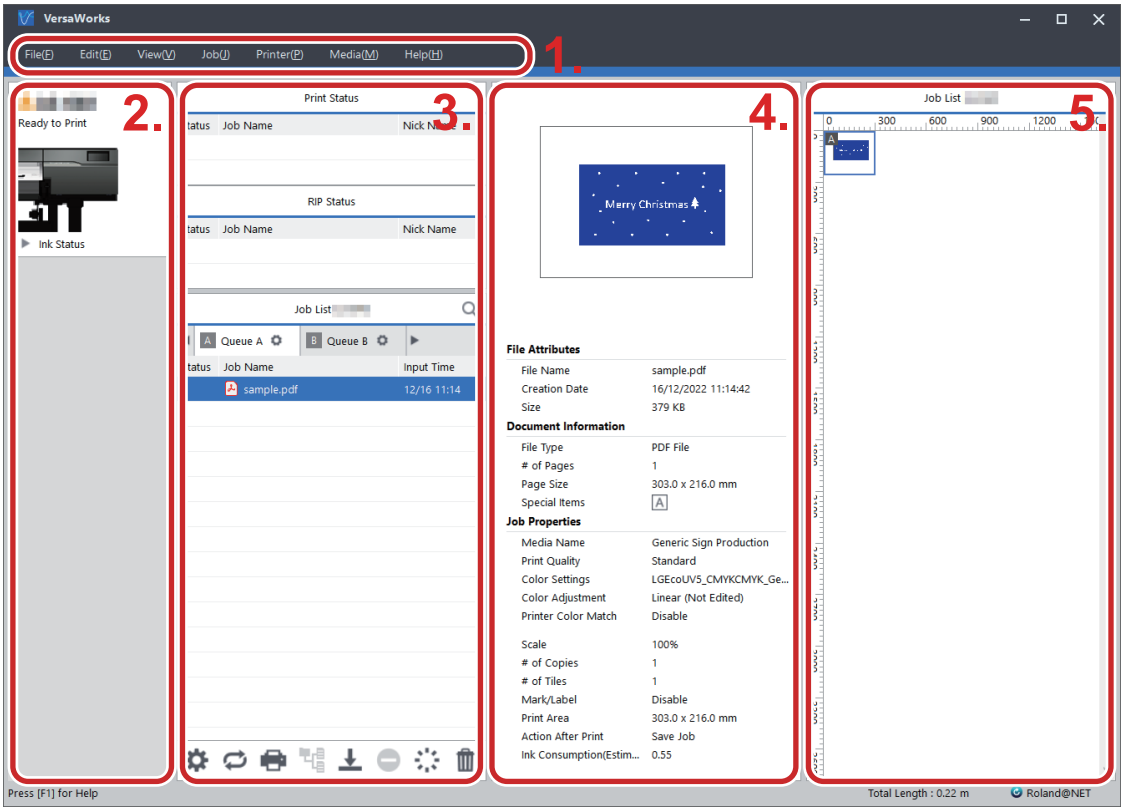


Window Layout

Top Menu 13
1. Menu bar 14
2. Setting area 15
3. Job area 16
   About [**Queue Properties**] and [**Job Settings**] 17
   Job Assistant Window 23
4. Preview Area 24
5. Layout area 25
6. Status bar 26

Top Menu

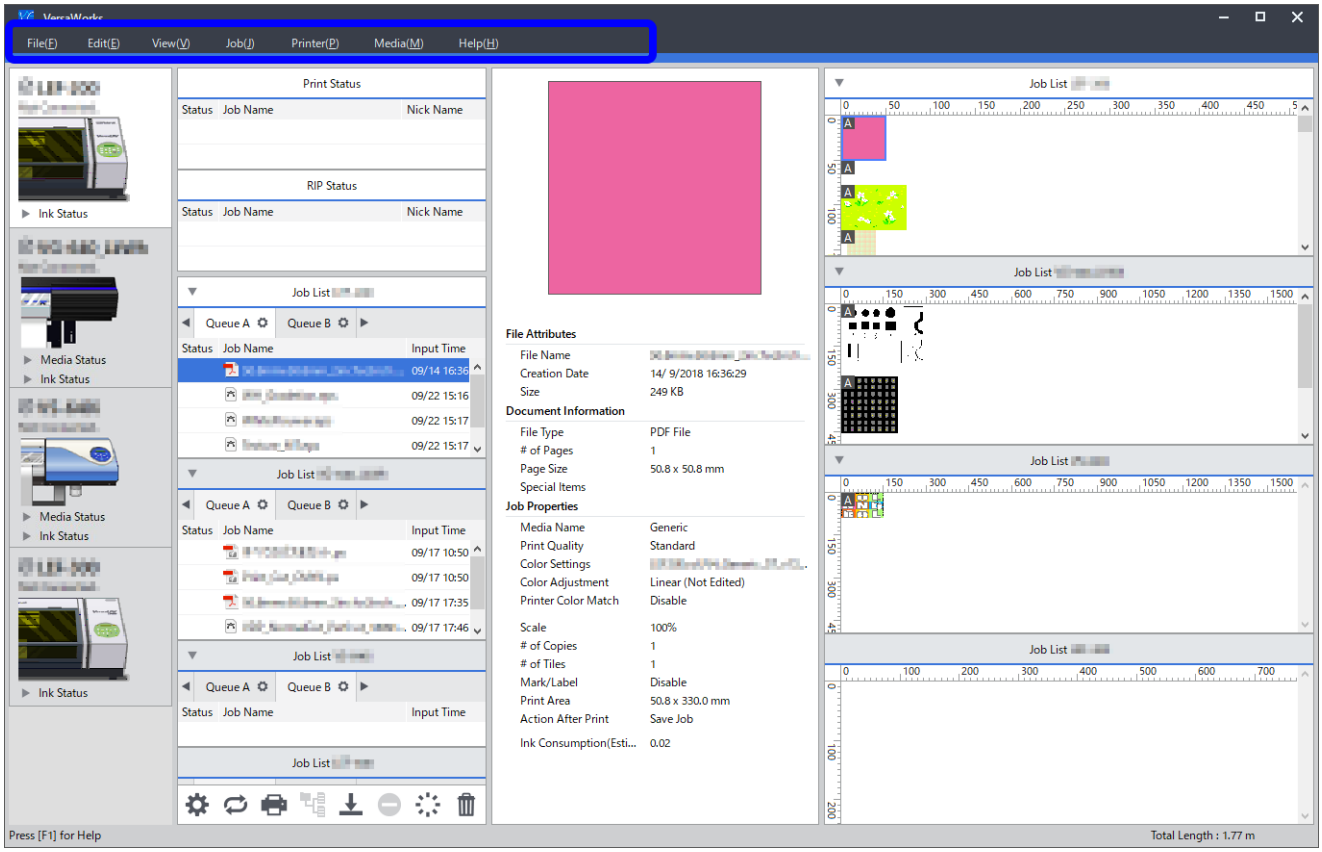
When you start VersaWorks, the top screen consisting of the following items is displayed:



1.	Menu bar	You can use this to configure VersaWorks settings and to perform VersaWorks operations.
2.	Setting area	This area displays the status of the connected printer.
3.	Job area	This area is used to configure the job settings and perform RIP and printing.
4.	Preview Area	This area displays a preview of the selected job. It also displays the file information, document information, and setting information of the job.
5.	Layout area	You can use this area to check how the selected job is positioned on the media.

1. Menu bar

You can use this to configure VersaWorks settings and to perform VersaWorks operations.

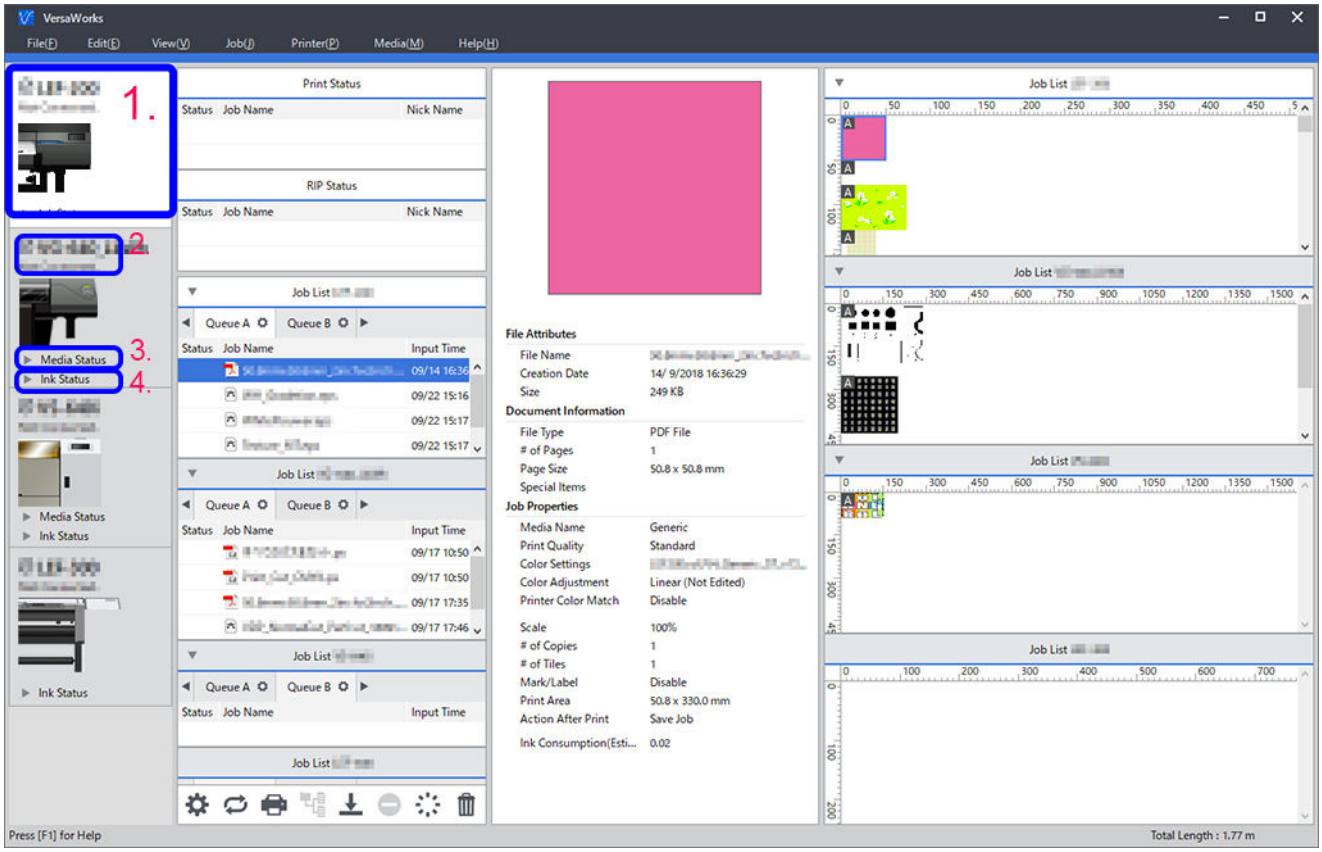


RELATED LINKS

- P. 343 Menu Bar List

2. Setting area

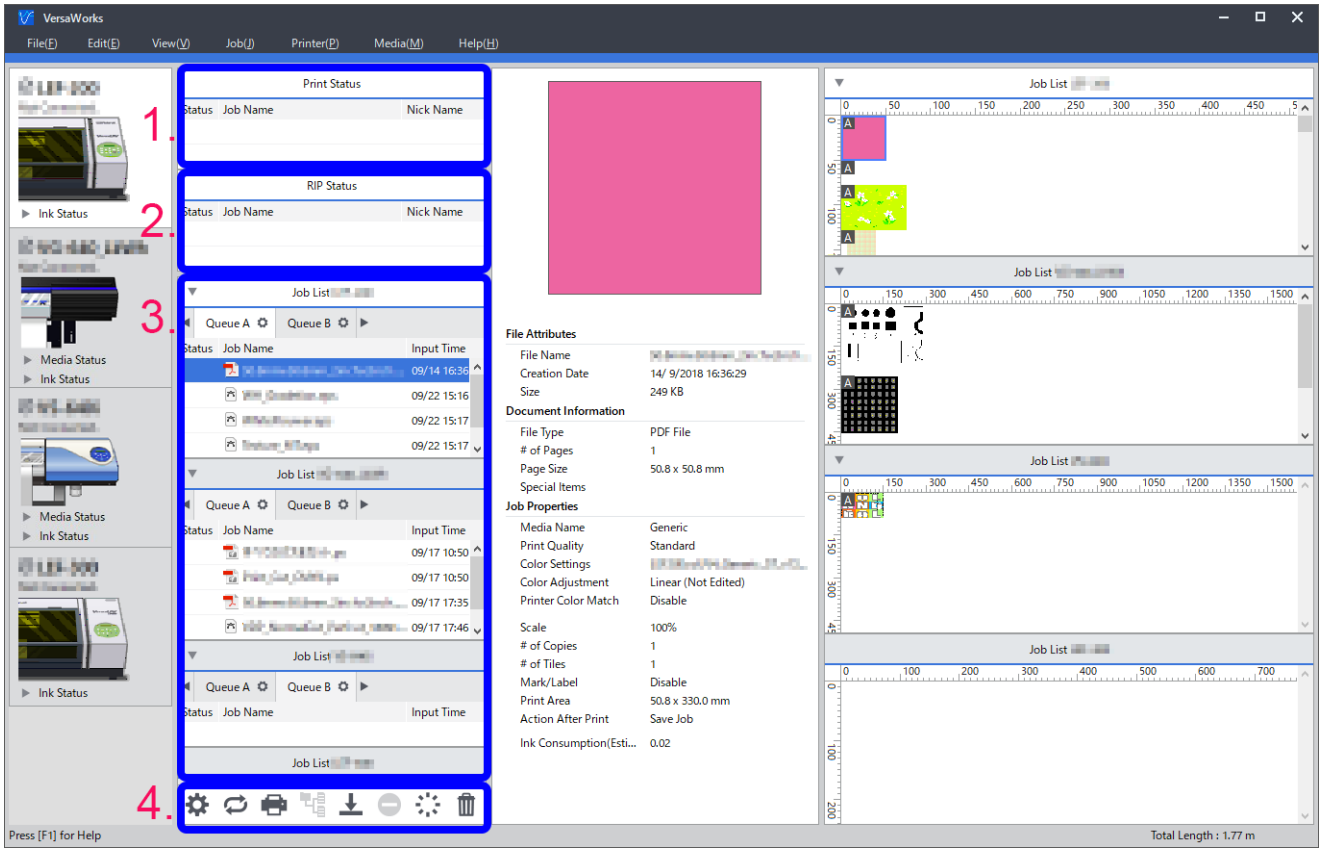
This area displays various information for the connected printer.



1.	Printer display	An image and the status of the printer connected to VersaWorks are displayed here. When selected, the printer is shown with a white background. Double-click the image to display the [**Printer Status**] window. Information such as the firmware version and the amount of ink remaining are displayed in the [**Printer Status**] window.
2.	Status	Displays the status icons, model name, and printer status (connection and power status). P. 28 Checking the Printer Connection and Status
3.	Media Status	Click to display the media name, media size, and other media information that is managed by the printer.
4.	Remaining ink display	Click here to display the amount of ink remaining. Nothing is displayed for cutting-dedicated machines in which no ink is loaded.

3. Job area

This area is used to perform operations such as outputting jobs and configuring their settings.



1.	Printing status	Displays jobs (source data names) waiting to be printed or being printed. The [**Status**] field shows the progress information during printing.
2.	RIP status	Displays jobs (source data names) waiting to be processed by the RIP or being processed by the RIP. The [**Status**] field shows the progress information during processing by the RIP.

3.	Job list	Displays jobs (source data names) registered in the queue folder. To select a job to be processed by the RIP or printed, click the desired job. You can change the order of the jobs within the job list by dragging the jobs. To display a shortcut menu (the same functions as the job tool bar), right-click the desired job. Click the tabs at the top of the list to switch the display between the job lists of Queue A to E.
		The [**Status**] field shows the job status using the following icons: : The job is being processed by the RIP. : The job has been processed by the RIP. : The job has been processed by the RIP (including cutting data). : The job is being printed. : The job has been printed. : Automatic nesting standby mode is in effect. : The job is being generated (standby status). : The processing by the RIP or printing has been canceled for the job. : The preview for the job is being generated. : The job file has been saved. : The data format is not supported by VersaWorks.
		The [**Job Name**] field shows the job setting details with the following icons and the set job name. : Job group; Variation job : Layered job : UV illumination job : Step & repeat job : Nested job : Composed job
4.	Job tool bar*1	: Displays the [Job Settings] window to configure the settings of the selected job such as the layout and quality. : Processes the selected job by the RIP. The job is not printed. : Prints the selected job. If the target job has not been processed by the RIP, the job is processed by the RIP before being printed. : Groups the selected jobs to form a single (nested) job. : Saves the printing settings and RIP processed data of the selected job to a file. : Cancels the processing by the RIP or printing in progress. : Deletes the intermediate files for the selected job. : Deletes the selected job from the job list.

*1 You can also perform the same operations from the menu that is displayed when you right-click a job in the job list and from the [**Job**] menu on the menu bar.

About [Queue Properties] and [Job Settings]

There are two printing settings when outputting print data. These are the [**Queue Properties**] window for setting in the queue folder that contains the job, and the [**Job Settings**] window for setting in the job.

Basic usage

Configure various settings on the queue folder in advance. After you configure the settings, enter the print data and apply the queue folder settings. Change each print data as necessary in [**Job Settings**].

MEMO

If [**Queue Properties**] settings were changed after [**Job Settings**] was performed, the settings are not applied to jobs that were already in the job list before the settings were changed. To apply them, perform [**Clear**].

For example, after setting the number of copies to 3 in the job settings for print data "A," you set the number of copies to 2 in the queue folder for that print data. In this case, printing print data "A" will result in 3 copies being printed. To apply the queue folder settings set later (number of copies 2) to print data A, select print data A and perform [**Clear**].

List of printing setting icons

MEMO

- The name is displayed below each icon. The icon names can be hidden.
- The items which can be selected vary depending on the selected printer.

Button	Name	Overview
	[**Layout**]	Configures the settings related to the printing area and job layout.
	[**Quality**]	Configures the job print quality and color management settings.
	[**Color Adjustment**]	Adjusts the level and tone of each color.
	[**File Format**]	Configures the necessary settings to match the file format and color settings of the data to print.
	[**Mark**]	Sets the details when marks and job information are added to and printed with the job.
	[**Printer Controls**]	Configures the printer control settings.
	[**Cut Controls**]	Configures the settings for the cutting operation and printer control method.
	[**Job Management**]	Configures settings related to the processing of jobs registered to the job list.
	[**Clip and Tile**]	Configures the settings for image clipping, dividing, and overlap width.

Button	Name	Overview
	[Variable Data]	Configures settings for replacing portions of the image to create output with unique images or text per copy.
	[Special Color]	Configures the spot color printing settings.
	[Customize]	Configures the settings for showing/hiding the printing setting tabs and tab names. P. 38 Customizing the Display of the Job Settings Tab

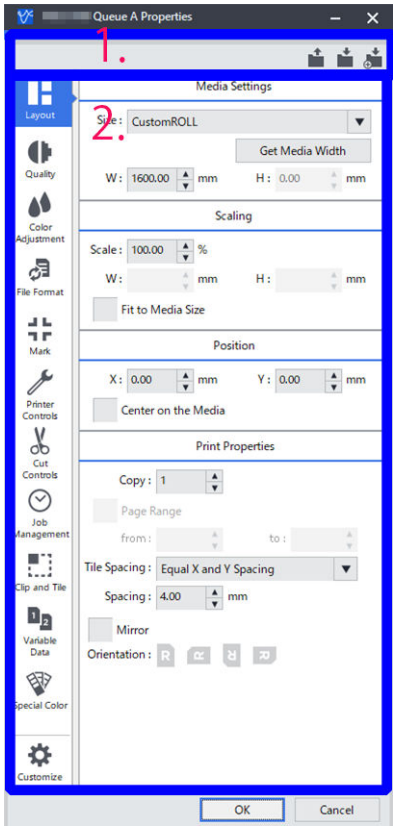
[Queue Properties] Window

This is used to make settings (dedicated settings such as specific media or request details) common to all print data placed in the queue folder. In cases such as when the media used or printing specifications are the same, configuring the queue property settings will eliminate the need to configure the job settings for each print data.

[Queue Properties] window opening method

- Click ⚙ for the queue folder to be used.
- Click [**Edit**]>[**Input Folder Name**].

The screen shown below appears.



1.	You can use this area to save the details set in the [**Queue Properties**] window as a printing settings file and to load saved printing settings files.
2.	This area is used to configure various printing settings. The settings in this window are applied to all jobs unless the settings are changed in the [**Job Settings**] window. The following settings cannot be changed from the [**Queue Properties**] window. Configure these settings from the [**Job Settings**] window. • [**Layout**]>[**Scaling**]>[**W**][**H**][**Page Range**][**Orientation**] • [**Clip and Tile**] This setting may not be possible depending on the entered image file (job).

Details of the [Queue Properties] window

Clicking the tabs on the left side of the window displays the associated settings on the right side. Settings can also be configured separately for each queue folder. For example, the print quality can be different for each folder and the settings can be different for the RIP server and client. Also, to process jobs automatically, be sure to complete all the settings in the [**Queue Properties**] window.

MEMO

Settings changed in the [**Queue Properties**] window are not applied to jobs that were already in the job list before the settings were changed. To do so, click [**Clear**].

RELATED LINKS

- P. 22 [**Job Settings**] Window

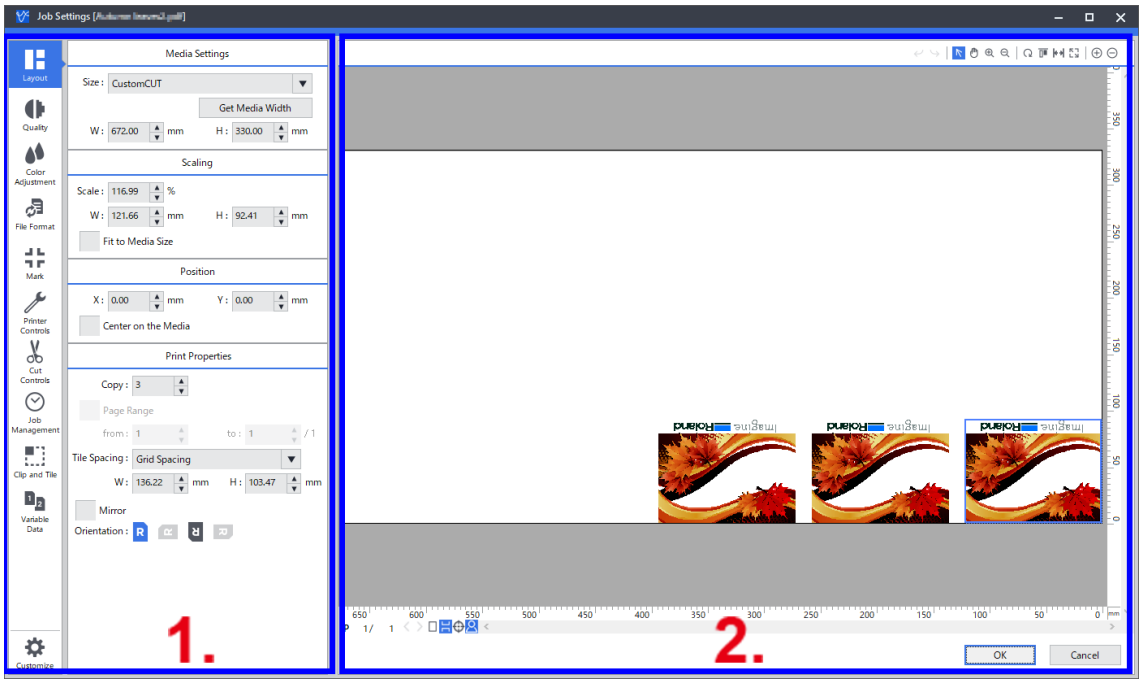
[Job Settings] Window

The printing settings can be configured for each print data. These take priority over the settings in the [**Queue Properties**] window.

[Job Settings] window opening method

- Double-click the job.
- Right-click a job, and then click [**Job Settings**] .
- Select a job, and then click on the job tool bar.
- Select a job, and then click [**Job**]>[**Settings**].
- Double-click the image in the layout window or preview window.

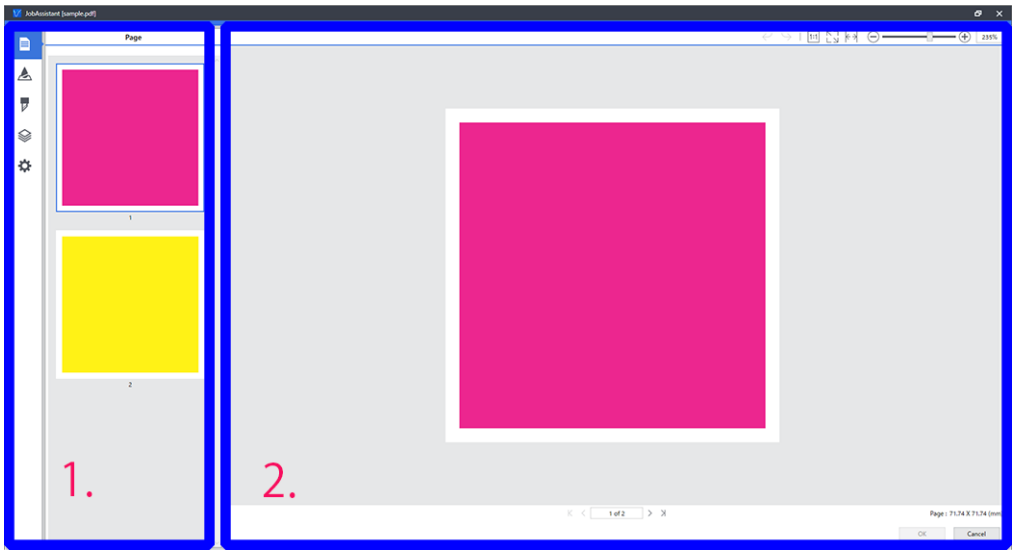
[**Quality**]>[**Quality Settings**]>[**Print Quality**] displays the approximate print time.



1.	This area is used to configure various printing settings. Details changed here are given higher priority than the settings in the [**Queue Properties**] window.
2.	This is the layout area, in which you can check the job's printing position in the window. You can use the editing tools at the top of the layout area to set the printing position while checking the window.

Job Assistant Window

Use this window to configure Job Assistant settings. You can generate spot color plates (white, gloss, primer) and add cutting lines to PDF format design data. In addition to the Job Assistant settings area, there is a preview area.



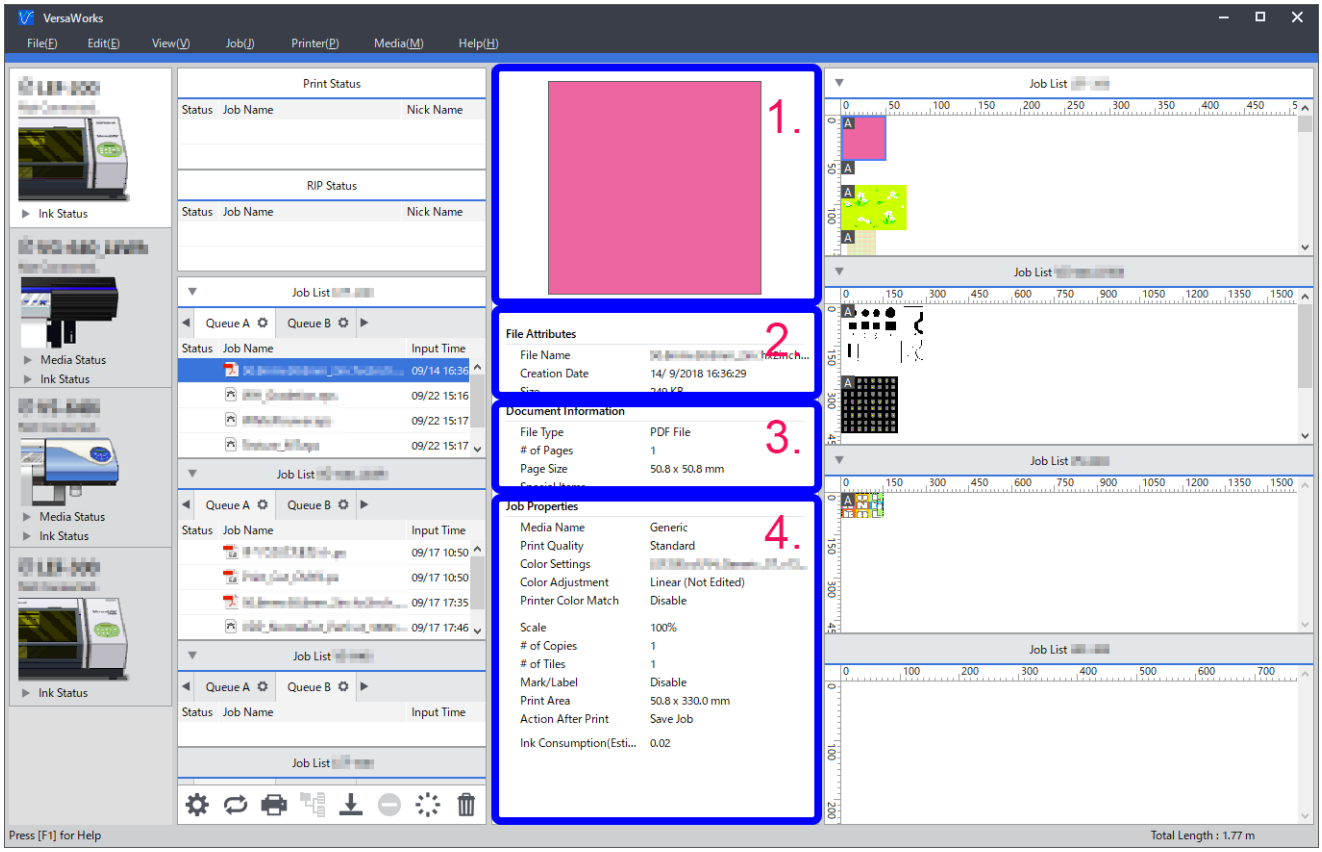
1.	This area is used to configure various Job Assistant settings.
2.	This is the preview area. A variety of Job Assistant settings can be configured while checking them on the screen.

List of Job Assistant icons

Button	Overview
	Displays the pages.
	Creates spot color plates by configuring their detailed settings.
	Creates cutting lines by configuring their detailed settings.
	Set whether to print or not print each layer.
	Sets the colors of cutting lines and perforated cutting lines.

4. Preview Area

This area displays the preview, file information, document information, and setting information of the job selected in the job list.



1.	Job preview	Double-click the preview image to display the [**Job Settings**] window.
2.	File information	The name, creation date and time, and size of the file are displayed.
3.	Document information	The file type, number of pages, page size, and special items are displayed. The meanings of the special items are indicated below. A: Cutting data is included. A: Perforated cut data is included. : Variable printing is enabled. Wh: Data for white ink is included. Gl: Data for gloss ink is included. Mt: Data for metallic ink is included. Pr: Data for primer is included.
4.	Setting information	The [**Media Type**], [**Print Quality**], and other such job printing settings are displayed. When processing by the RIP is performed, the text [**(Estimate)**] will disappear from [**Ink Consumption (Estimate)**] and the approximate ink consumption amount is displayed.

RELATED LINKS

- P. 22 [**Job Settings**] Window

5. Layout area

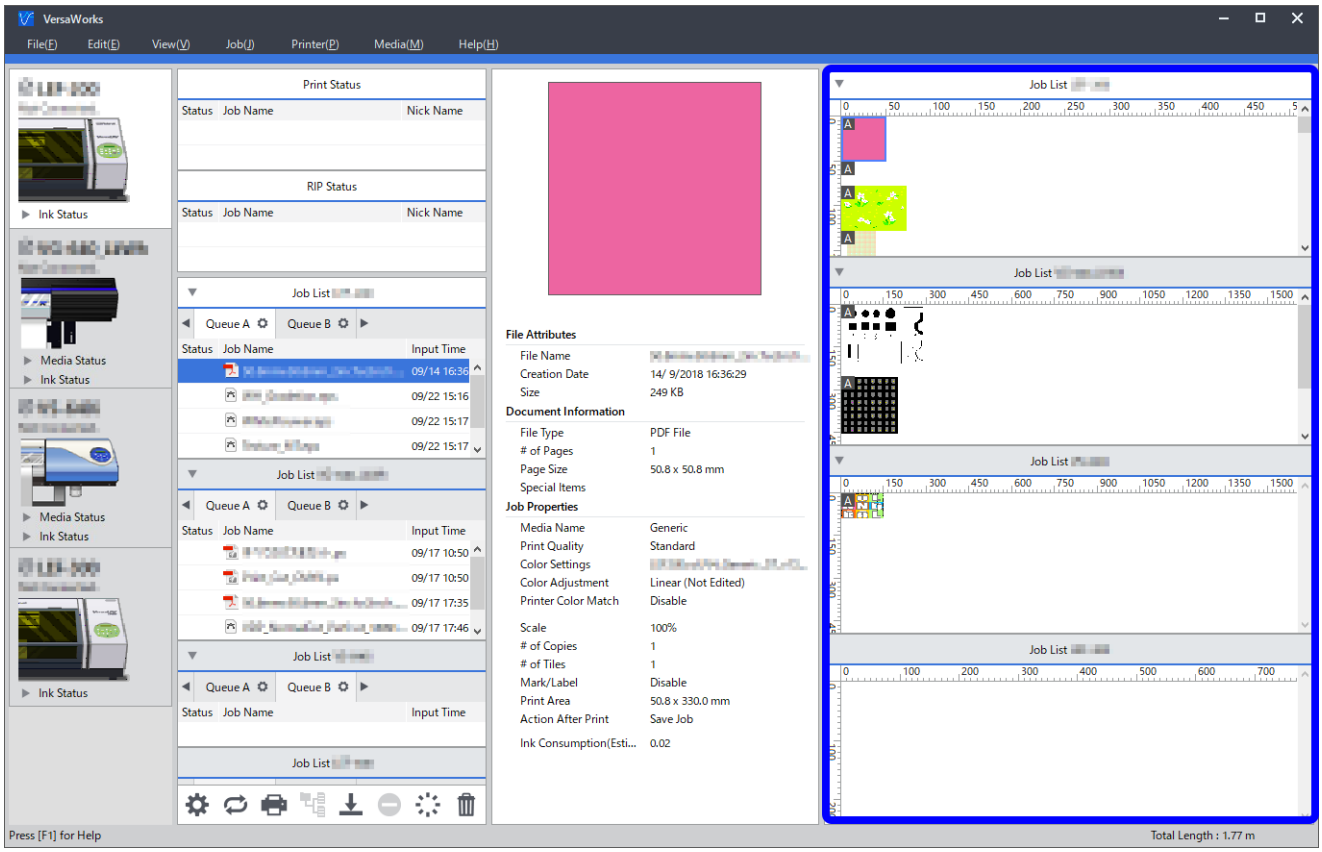
You can use this area to check the layout of the job on the media.

Double-click the displayed job preview to display the [**Job Settings**] window.

Rulers are displayed at the top and on the left side of the layout window, allowing the media and job sizes to be checked.

To set the unit of the rulers, use [**Unit**] under [**General**] in [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**].

Select the [**Show Queue Identifier in Layout Window**] check box under [**General**] to identify the data in the queue folders from which jobs come from.



RELATED LINKS

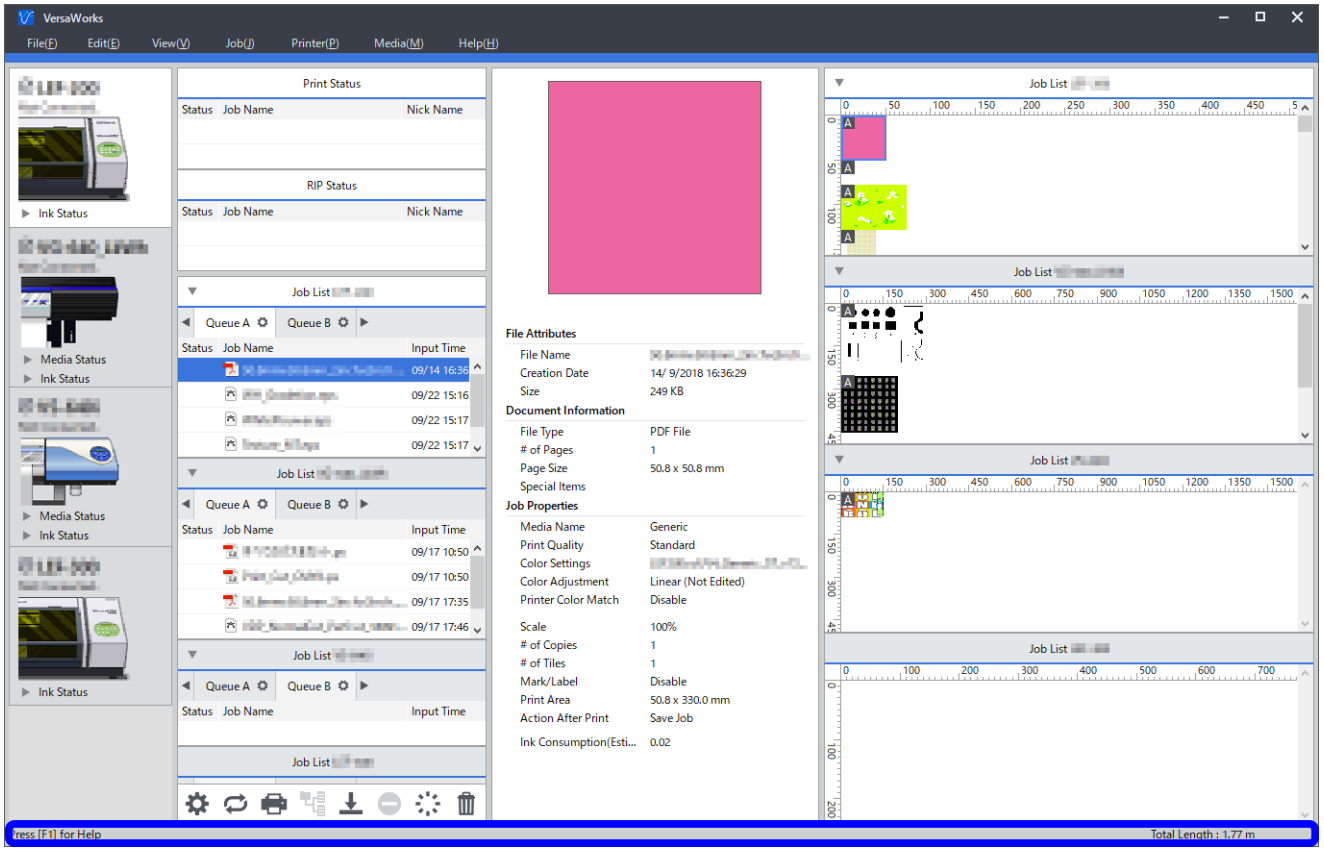
- P. 22 [**Job Settings**] Window
- P. 30 Preferences

6. Status bar

The current status of VersaWorks (the explanation of the selected function and the total print length) is displayed.

When the automatic update function of VersaWorks is turned on, 

is displayed.



Initial Settings

Checking before Output 28
Checking the Printer Connection and Status 28
Preferences 30
Settings to Configure First 30
Settings to Configure Once You are Experienced 31

Checking before Output

Configure the initial settings before using VersaWorks.

Checking the Printer Connection and Status

Procedure

1. **Check the network connection of the printer and computer, and switch them both on.**

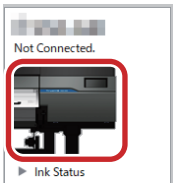
2. **Set up the media in the printer.**

   The setup method varies depending on the printer. Carry out setup according to the procedure in the printer's user's manual.

3. **Start VersaWorks.**

4. **Check that the printer to use is displayed.**

   Check that your printer is registered and that the status is and **[Ready to Print]**.



List of icons

Icon	Text status
	[Ready to Print][Secondary Power OFF][Setup Incomplete][Printing][Cutting][Drying][Canceling][Paused][MENU State][Cleaning][Preparing for printing][Ready][Initializing]
	[Secondary Power OFF][Paused (Cartridge Uninstalled)][Paused (Ink Empty)][Paused (Head Height Adjustment)][Stopped (Cover Open)][Check the printer]
	The following text status icons appear when the ink is insufficient. **[Ready to Print][Setup Incomplete][Printing][Cutting][Drying][Canceling][Paused][MENU State][Cleaning][Preparing for printing][Ready][Initializing]**
	[Invalid Model Setting][Invalid Ink Type Setting][Unknown][Media Not Installed][Fatal Error][Waiting for Ink Filling][Check the printer]
	[Not Connected.]

MEMO

In addition to the above icons, is displayed when the printer is in rotary mode and is displayed when a nozzle mask is set.

You can check these statuses by clicking **[Media Status]** and **[Ink Status]**.

The following procedure explains how to view detailed **[Printer Status]**.

(1) **Click the image of the printer to view to select it.**

The background will change to white.

(2) **Display the [Printer Status] window.**

- Click **[Ink Status]**>**[Printer Status]** below the machine icon.

- Click [**Printer**]>[**Printer Status**] on the menu bar.

The [**Printer Status**] window appears. This window includes the following information. Depending on the model you are using, some items may not be displayed.

- Model Name
- Port
- Firmware Version
- Serial Number
- Status
- Media Name
- Media Width (width of the printing area on the media currently loaded on the printer)
- Media Length (length of the printing area on the media currently loaded on the printer)
- Table Height
- Rotary Mode
- Amount of ink remaining

(3) **To update the displayed information, click [Update].**

(4) **Click [OK] .**

Preferences

Before using VersaWorks, configure the usage environment so that it can be used correctly.

When using, there are settings to configure first and settings such as customization to configure once you are experienced. With both types of settings, complete settings such as those related to the VersaWorks display (for example, the display language, unit, and quality of the preview image), those related to VersaWorks operations (for example, the number of simultaneous RIP processing operations and the warning display for the ink limit), and the measurement instruments to use.

Settings to Configure First

Setting the Language, Font Size, and Unit

You can set the language, font size, and unit to display in VersaWorks. When changing the language or font size, VersaWorks must be restarted for the changes to be applied.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Preferences] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Preferences**] window appears.
2. **Click [General].**
3. **Select [Language], [Font Size], and [Unit].**
   You can select 1 of 13 languages; [**Large**], [**Standard**], or [**Small**] for the font size; and [**mm**], [**cm**], or [**inch**] for the unit.
4. **Click [OK].**
5. **When the message [Language/Font Size Setting will be valid after restarting the application.] appears, click [OK].**
6. **Restart VersaWorks to apply the language or font size changes.**
   A restart is not necessary if you only changed the unit.

Settings to Configure Once You are Experienced

Setting the Number of Simultaneous RIP Processing Operations

When multiple printers are connected to VersaWorks, you can set the number of RIP processing operations to perform simultaneously.

For example, if there are three jobs that you want to perform RIP processing on, specifying 2 allows for simultaneous RIP processing on two of the three jobs. Up to two jobs can be selected as the maximum number of concurrent RIP processes when there are two printers registered, and up to four jobs can be selected when there are four such printers. When the default value for the number of connected printers is 1, the number is one. When it is 2 to 4, the number is two. When a large number is set, the amount of computer CPU usage and memory usage increase.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Preferences] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Preferences**] window appears.
2. **Click the [General] tab.**
3. **Select the number of simultaneous RIP processes from [Max. # of concurrent RIP processes] under [Processing Speed Settings].**
4. **Click [OK] to close the [Preferences] window.**

Setting the Number of Simultaneous Printing Operations

When multiple printers are connected to VersaWorks, you can set the number of printing operations to perform simultaneously.

For example, configure this setting when you want to print simultaneously using multiple printers. When you are printing on two printers, specifying a value of 1 results in data being transmitted sequentially to one printer and then to the other. If a value of 2 is specified, data is transmitted to two printers simultaneously, and simultaneous printing begins. When a large number is set, the amount of computer CPU usage and memory usage increase.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Preferences] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Preferences**] window appears.
2. **Click the [Multiple Printer Support] tab.**
3. **Select the number of simultaneous printing operations from [Max. # of Concurrent Outputs] under [Output Settings].**
4. **Click [OK] to close the [Preferences] window.**

Increasing Memory

With a large quantity of image data, a memory shortage may occur, which may result in processing by the RIP and output becoming slow or impossible, or prevent print data from being added to the job list. In this case, increase the amount of memory.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Preferences] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Preferences**] window appears.
2. **Click the [General] tab.**
3. **Adjust [Memory Amount] under [Adjust Amount of Memory Used in RIP].**
   Drag the slider or click its left and right sides to change the amount of memory.
   The default value is 1024 MB.
4. **Click [OK] to close the [Preferences] window.**

Hiding the Queue Folder Identification in the Layout Window

With the initial settings, the queue folder name (A to E) is displayed in the preview image so that you can tell which queue folder is being displayed in the preview image in the layout window. It can be hidden in cases such as when a part of the preview image is covered, or when multiple queue folders are not used.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Preferences] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Preferences**] window appears.
2. **Click the [General] tab.**
3. **Clear the [Show Queue Identifier in Layout Window] check box under [Input Folder].**
   This check box is selected by default.
4. **Click [OK].**
   The [**Preferences**] window closes. Scroll the preview image to apply the changes.

Printing Only Once at All Times

Print the specified job only once at all times without specifying the print count.

When this setting is used (turned off), printing will begin immediately when [Print] is clicked, eliminating the hassle of specifying the print count each time.

With the default value of on, a window for specifying the print count is displayed each time when [Print] is clicked. The print count can be specified for job groups and layered jobs.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Preferences] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Preferences**] window appears.
2. **Click the [General] tab.**
3. **Clear the [Configure Advanced Print Settings] check box under [Print Options].**
   This check box is selected by default.
4. **Click [OK] to close the [Preferences] window.**

Setting Warning Displays According to the Amount of Remaining Ink

With the default settings, a warning is displayed at print start when the amount of ink remaining is low. However, because there are cases when printing can be completed depending on the amount of ink used and the amount of ink remaining in the printer, it is possible to configure the setting so that this warning is not displayed.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Preferences] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Preferences**] window appears.
2. **Click the [General] tab.**
3. **Clear the [Display warning according to the amount of ink remaining when printing] check box under [Remaining Ink Warnings].**
   This check box is selected by default.
4. **Click [OK] to close the [Preferences] window.**

Setting the Measurement Instrument to Use

When using a measurement instrument, set the type of measurement instrument to use for [**For Color Charts**], [**For Spot and Special Colors**], and [**For Printer Color Matching**] measurement.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Preferences] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Preferences**] window appears.
2. **Click the [Measurement Instrument] tab.**
3. **According to the application, select the measurement instrument to use from [Model].**
   - [For Color Charts]
   - [For Spot and Special Colors]
   - [For Printer Color Matching]
4. **Click [OK] to close the [Preferences] window.**

Customizing the Display of the Job Settings Tab

You can show/hide or reorder the [**Job Settings**] and [**Queue Properties**] tabs ([**Layout**], [**Quality**], [**Color Adjustment**], etc.) for each registered printer. The display can be customized, such as by reordering the tabs in order of the frequency of use, or hiding tabs that are not changed or used.

When set with [**Job Settings**] or with [**Queue Properties**], it is applied to all queue folders and jobs for that printer.

Procedure

1. **Double-click the job for the printer being set up, or click for a queue folder for the printer being set up.**

2. **Click [Customize].**

   The [**Tab Display Settings**] window appears.

3. **Follow the procedure below to customize the display of the printing setting tabs.**

   - **Hiding printing setting tabs**

     a. Select the target tab from [**Tabs to Show and Their Order**], then click >>.

     The target tab is moved to [**Tabs to Hide**].

     b. To return to [**Tabs to Show and Their Order**], select the target tab and click <<.

     The target tab is moved to [**Tabs to Show and Their Order**].

   - **Changing the order of the printing setting tabs**

     Select the target tab from [**Tabs to Show and Their Order**], then click [**Move Up**] or [**Move Down**] to change the order.

   - **Hiding tab names**

     Unselect the [**Show Labels**] check box.

   MEMO

   Click [**Reset**] to restore the default values.

4. **Click [OK] to close the [Tab Display Settings] window.**

Checking the Link Settings with External Applications

When the following application software links with VersaWorks, this setting must be on.

- ConnectHub
- FlexiDESIGNER

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Preferences].**
   The [**Preferences**] window appears.
2. **Click the [Linking] tab.**
3. **Check that the [Link with External Application] check box is selected.**
   This check box is selected by default.
4. **Click [OK] to close [Preferences].**

Update

Setting and Performing Updates 41
Using the Latest Version of VersaWorks.....42
Performing Updates According to Their Details 43
Configuring Update Settings.....45
Checking the Latest Information.....47
Checking the Version Information 47

Setting and Performing Updates

VersaWorks updates several times a year. Updates will be made to support new models, to add new features, media or color profiles, and to fix bugs. We recommend that you always update to the latest version of VersaWorks so that you can use the highly-functional VersaWorks.

VersaWorks is updated over an Internet connection. However, it may take some time to download and install the update file depending on your operating environment.

Select the update method below according to your VersaWorks use status. You can only update to the latest version available at the time of the update.

- Check for updates and update VersaWorks when it starts up.
  P. 42 Using the Latest Version of VersaWorks
- Check the contents of the update at any time you want and decide whether to update or not update.
  P. 44 Performing Updates after Manually Checking the Update Status

Using the Latest Version of VersaWorks

We recommend that you always update to and use the latest version of VersaWorks so that you can take advantage of the high functionality of VersaWorks. Select [**Update**] in this notification window to receive update information when VersaWorks starts. Performing [**Update**] when you receive such a notification allows you to always use the latest version of VersaWorks.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Preferences] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Preferences**] window appears.
2. **Click the [Roland@NET] tab.**
3. **Select the [Check for Updates Automatically and Notify] check box.**
4. **Select [Frequency] under [Update Settings].**
   Select the frequency for checking update information from the following.
   - [**Every Launch**]
   - [**Every Day**]
   - [**Every Week**]
   - [**Every Month**]
5. **Click [OK] to close [Preferences].**

During VersaWorks startup, the [**Select updates**] window displays the frequency set with [**Frequency**]. Click [**Update**] to update VersaWorks.

Performing Updates According to Their Details

You can perform updates according to their notified details. You can also manually check the update status and perform updates with the desired timing.

Performing Updates According to Automatic Notifications

Updates are performed according to the contents of notifications when VersaWorks is started. It is assumed that the settings have been configured so that update information is obtained automatically and update notifications are displayed.

Procedure

1. **Start VersaWorks.**
2. **Select the item to update in the displayed [Select updates] window.**
3. **To update color profiles, click [Details].**
   The [**Select Media**] window appears.
4. **Select the [Model], and then select the media that requires a profile from the media displayed for [Media].**
   If you select the [**Color Profiles**] check box without configuring the [**Details**] settings, all profiles that can be downloaded will be downloaded.
5. **Click [OK].**
6. **Click [Update].**
   The downloading of the update data starts.
7. **Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the update procedure.**
   Once the update is complete, check that VersaWorks is the latest version.

Performing Updates after Manually Checking the Update Status

Check the update status and perform update if necessary before starting VersaWorks.

Procedure

1. **Exit VersaWorks if it is running.**
2. **Start the VersaWorks [Online Update] tool.**
   - Windows 11: Click [**Start**]>[**All apps**], and then click [**VersaWorks**]>[**Online Update**].
   - Windows 10: Click [**Start**], and then click [**VersaWorks**]>[**Online Update**].

   The [**Manual Updater**] window appears. Configure the settings for updating the software from this window.
3. **Click [Check for updates].**

   If no update is required, a message will be displayed, so click [**OK**].
4. **Select the item to update in the displayed [Select updates] window.**
5. **To update color profiles, click [Details].**

   The [**Select Media**] window appears.
6. **Select the [Model], and then select the media that requires a profile from the media displayed for [Media].**

   If you select the [**Color Profiles**] check box without configuring the [**Details**] settings, all profiles that can be downloaded will be downloaded.
7. **Click [OK].**
8. **Click [Update].**

   The downloading of the update data starts.
9. **Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the update procedure.**

   Once the update is complete, check that VersaWorks is the latest version.

Configuring Update Settings

Configure the settings for updating VersaWorks as necessary.

Procedure

1. **Exit VersaWorks if it is running.**

2. **Start the VersaWorks [Online Update] tool.**
   - Windows 11: Click [**Start**]>[**All apps**], and then click [**VersaWorks**]>[**Online Update**].
   - Windows 10: Click [**Start**], and then click [**VersaWorks**]>[**Online Update**].

   The [**Manual Updater**] window appears. Configure the settings for updating the software from this window.

Step 1: Enter the proxy server settings.

Configure this setting because when a proxy server is set, access when downloading may be restricted and download may not be possible.

Procedure

1. **In the [Manual Updater] window, click [Settings]>[Preferences].**

   The [**Preferences**] window appears.

2. **Select the [Use Proxy Server] check box.**

3. **Enter the [IP Address] and [Port].**

   Proceed with configuring any necessary optional settings.

Step 2: Set the update details.

You can configure advanced settings for updates. It is recommended that you use the default settings.

Procedure

1. **Set the [Update Options].**

   The items that can be set are as follows. The recommended settings are indicated in parentheses.
   - [**Download Updates for ALL Languages**] (Selected)

     If you clear this check box, only the update data for the current language setting will be downloaded. In this case, you cannot display information in other languages.
   - [**Download Media and Color Profiles**] (Selected)

     If you select this check box, you can select the downloading conditions. If you clear this check box, the update data related to media and profiles will not be downloaded.
     - [**ALL Available Updates**] (Selected)

       If you select this check box, the data for all printers and for all ink configurations supported by VersaWorks will be updated.
     - [**Only for the Current Printer Model in Use**] (Cleared)

       If you select this check box, the data for the current printer model and for all ink configurations supported by this model will be updated.
     - [**Only for the Current Printer Model and Ink Type**] (Cleared)

If you select this check box, only the data for the current printer model and ink configuration will be updated.

2. **Click [OK].**

3. **Click [Check for updates].**

   If update data is available, the [**Select updates**] window appears.

   If the message [**The server name or address could not be resolved.**"] is displayed, configure the settings again.

   MEMO

   To check the update information on the website, click the URL displayed under [**Update Information**] in the [**Manual Updater**] window.

Checking the Latest Information

The latest VersaWorks information is posted at our website located at the link below.
https://versaworks.rolanddg.com/update_infoVW/x64/index.html

Checking the Version Information

This section explains how to check the version of VersaWorks you are currently using.

Procedure

1. **Click [Help]>[About VersaWorks].**
   The [**About VersaWorks**] window appears.
2. **Check the version.**
3. **Click [OK] to close the [About VersaWorks] window.**

Backing Up Data

Saving VersaWorks Settings and Jobs for Later Use 49
Saving Backup Data 49
Loading Backup Data 50

Saving VersaWorks Settings and Jobs for Later Use

Various VersaWorks settings can be reproduced on new computers from data backed up from the original computer when changing or adding computers. The following data can be backed up.

- Preferences
- Printer Status
- Jobs (Job information used in VersaWorks)
- Important files (User-defined spot colors, special colors, and media; printing settings files; color-matching data; Nearest Color Finder; etc.)

MEMO

- Print data (PDF files, EPS files) should be backed up separately.
- Backup data cannot be imported if the VersaWorks version is older than the version used to create the backup data.

Saving Backup Data

Save the VersaWorks settings and job backup data.

Procedure

1. **In an arbitrary location, create a folder where the backup data should be stored.**
   Make sure the folder is empty.
2. **Exit VersaWorks.**
3. **Start the VersaWorks [Initialize Application] tool.**
   - Windows 11: Click [**Start**]>[**All apps**], and then click [**VersaWorks**]>[**Initialize Application**].
   - Windows 10: Click [**Start**], and then click [**VersaWorks**]>[**Initialize Application**].
4. **Click [Back Up].**
5. **Click [...], specify the folder created in Step 1, and then click [Back Up].**
6. **Click [Yes].**
   The backup data will be saved in the specified folder.
7. **When a completion message appears, click [OK].**
8. **Click [Close].**

Loading Backup Data

Load saved backup data.

Procedure

1. **Exit VersaWorks.**
2. **Start the VersaWorks [Initialize Application] tool.**
   - Windows 11: Click [**Start**]>[**All apps**], and then click [**VersaWorks**]>[**Initialize Application**].
   - Windows 10: Click [**Start**], and then click [**VersaWorks**]>[**Initialize Application**].
3. **Click [Restore].**
4. **Select the folder in which the backup data was saved, and then click [Restore].**
5. **Click [Yes].**
   The backup data will be loaded.
6. **When a completion message appears, click [OK].**
7. **Click [Close].**

Initialization

Initializing VersaWorks 52
Step 1: Initializing the Job and Print Properties 52
Step 2: Initializing All VersaWorks Settings 53
Step 3: Deleting Operation Data from before Startup Failed 54

Initializing VersaWorks

VersaWorks may fail to start correctly if data corruption occurs. It may also freeze while configuring jobs settings, etc. In such cases, initialization will restore VersaWorks.

In Step 1, all jobs and printing settings are deleted. If VersaWorks still cannot be restored, initialize all settings in Step 2.

Step 1: Initializing the Job and Print Properties

Procedure

1. **Exit VersaWorks.**
2. **Start the VersaWorks [Initialize Application] tool.**
   - Windows 11: Click [**Start**]>[**All apps**], and then click [**VersaWorks**]>[**Initialize Application**].
   - Windows 10: Click [**Start**], and then click [**VersaWorks**]>[**Initialize Application**].
3. **Click [Initialize].**
   The initialization window appears.
4. **Select [Job and Print Properties], and then click [Initialize].**
5. **Click [Yes].**
   The job and print properties are initialized.
6. **Click [OK].**
7. **Click [Close].**
8. **Start VersaWorks.**
   The operation is completed if VersaWorks is started successfully. You do not need to perform Step 2.

If VersaWorks still cannot be started, proceed to the next step.

P. 53 Initializing All VersaWorks Settings

Step 2: Initializing All VersaWorks Settings

Procedure

1. **Exit VersaWorks.**
2. **Start the VersaWorks [Initialize Application] tool.**
   - Windows 11: Click [**Start**]>[**All apps**], and then click [**VersaWorks**]>[**Initialize Application**].
   - Windows 10: Click [**Start**], and then click [**VersaWorks**]>[**Initialize Application**].
3. **Click [Initialize].**
   The initialization window appears.
4. **Select [All (Exclude Important Data)], and then click [Initialize].**
5. **Click [Yes].**
   VersaWorks is initialized.
6. **Click [OK].**
7. **Click [Close].**

If VersaWorks still cannot be restored, proceed to the next step.

Step 3: Deleting Operation Data from before Startup Failed

Step 3: Deleting Operation Data from before Startup Failed

This section explains how you can select and delete all operation data from before VersaWorks failed to start.

Procedure

1. **Exit VersaWorks.**
2. **Start the VersaWorks [Initialize Application] tool.**
   - Windows 11: Click [**Start**]>[**All apps**], and then click [**VersaWorks**]>[**Initialize Application**].
   - Windows 10: Click [**Start**], and then click [**VersaWorks**]>[**Initialize Application**].
3. **Click [Initialize].**
   The initialization window appears.
4. **Click [Detailed Mode].**
   The detailed settings window appears.
   Click [**Simple Mode**] to switch to the simple settings window.
5. **Select the operation performed before VersaWorks failed to start, and then click [Initialize].**
   Example:
   - Select [**Custom Special Color**] if a spot color was added.
   - Select [**Printing Settings File**] if the printing settings file was changed.
6. **Click [Yes].**
   VersaWorks is initialized.
7. **Click [OK].**
8. **Click [Close].**

License

Software License 56

Software License

This software can be used by all users of the computer where it is installed. Jobs and printing settings can be shared, and multiple users can use VersaWorks with the same contents.

Basic Operations

Test Print

Test Printing from VersaWorks 59

Test Printing from VersaWorks

Printer operations can be used to print a test pattern for checking the nozzles. Correspondingly, the following pattern (approximately 260 × 182 mm [10.24 × 7.17 in.][*1]) is printed from VersaWorks.

By printing the same data, it is possible to check for changes resulting from the different printer or environment, or changes of the print settings.



Procedure

1. **Selecting the printer to test printing from.**

2. **Click [Printer]>[Test Print] on the menu bar.**

   The following message appears: [**The following job will be printed. Do you want to continue?**] Check whether the media loaded in the printer is large enough for the displayed page size.

3. **Select the queue folder from [Add Job To].**

4. **Click [OK].**

   The job for test printing is added to the job list, and then processing by the RIP and printing automatically start. Once the job has been printed, it is automatically deleted from the job list.

5. **When the message [Job has been sent successfully.] appears, click [OK].**

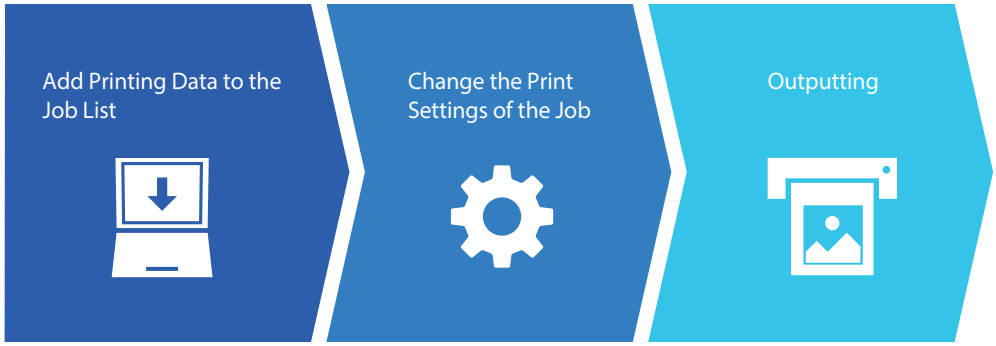
*1 If the printer's printing area is smaller than this, the print data is shrunk before printing. Load media with the maximum printing area.

Output Method

Basic Operations for Output 61
Step 1: Add Print Data to the Job List 61
Step 2: Change the Print Settings of the Job 64
Step 3: Outputting 66
Configuring the Queue Folder 68
Performing Only Processing by the RIP 70
Outputting from Other Computers 71
Outputting from the Windows Client 72
Outputting from the Mac Client 76
Outputting from Design Software 79
Windows 11, 10 79
Mac OS 10.X 80
Output Using a Hot Folder 81
Configuring Settings Using a Hot Folder 81

Basic Operations for Output

Basic operations for output are performed in the following sequence.



Step 1: Add Print Data to the Job List



Add print data to the job list (queue folder).

MEMO

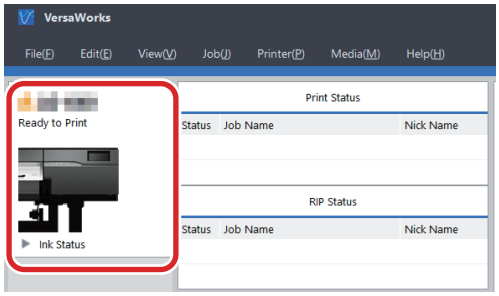
The print data size that can be input into VersaWorks must be 9.86 mm (0.39 in.) × 9.86 mm (0.39 in.) or larger and be in one of the following file formats.

- PDF*1
- EPS
- JPEG
- PostScript
- TIFF (with/without LZW compression)

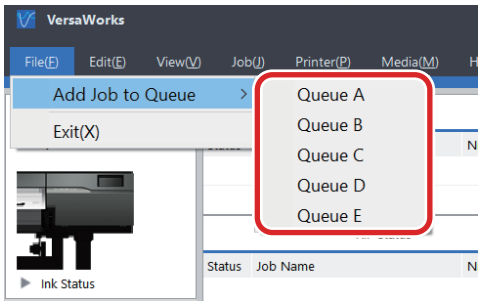
Procedure

1. **If multiple printers are registered, select the printer to use in the setting area.**
   The background of the printer image changes to white.

*1 PDFs are saved in artboard size, so exercise caution regarding the margins.

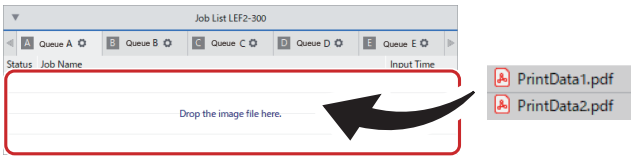


2. **Click [File]>[Add Job to Queue Folder] on the menu bar to select the queue folder to use.**

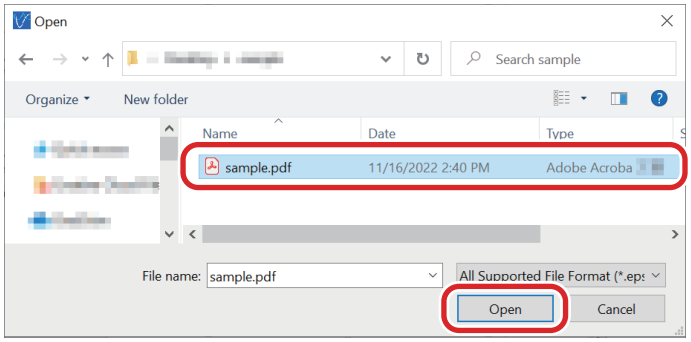


MEMO

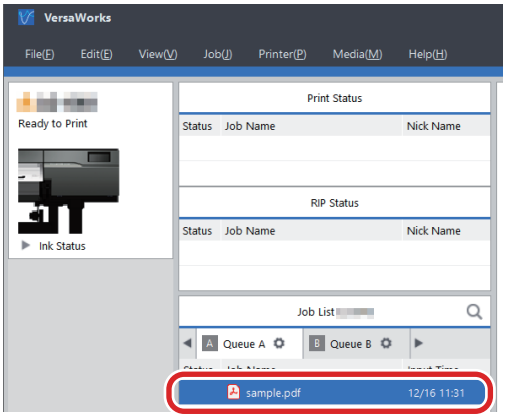
Can add print data directly to the job list by clicking the queue folder and dragging the print data to the job list. You can use this operation to add multiple print data at once.



3. **Select the print data to add to the job list, and then click [Open].**



The selected print data is displayed in the job list. To add multiple print data, repeat the above procedure.



Step 2: Change the Print Settings of the Job

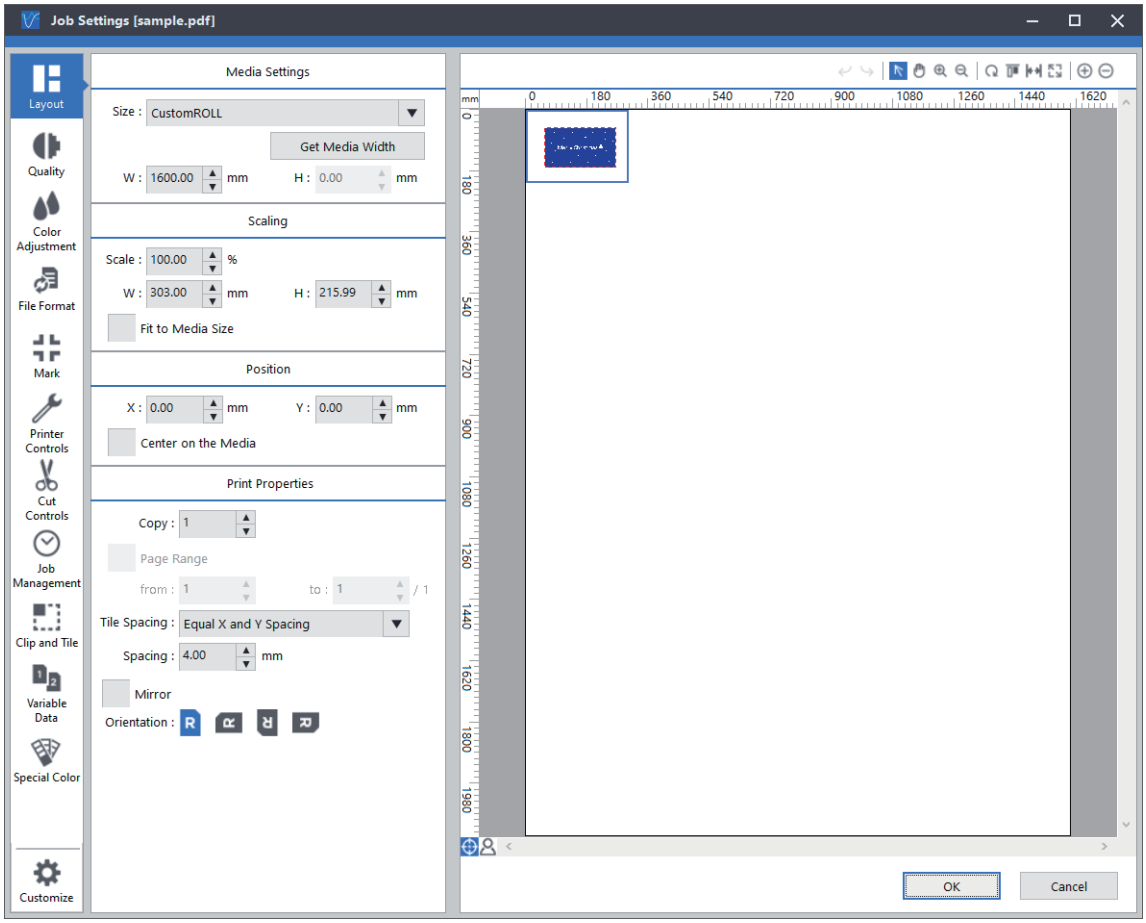
Step 2: Change the Print Settings of the Job

This section explains how to configure settings on the [**Job Settings**] window.
When each setting has already been configured according to Configuring the Queue Folder(P. 68), there is no need to configure settings at this time.

Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to display [Job Settings].**
   - Double-click the job.
   - Right-click a job, and then click [**Job Settings**] .
   - Select a job, and then click on the job tool bar.
   - Select a job, and then click [**Job**]>[**Settings**].
   - Double-click the image in the layout window or preview window.

   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.



2. **Make the necessary changes to the settings.**

You can configure various settings from the icons on the left side.

Example of settings

- **[Layout]**: **[Print Quality]**>**[Copy]**
- **[Quality]**: **[Quality Settings]**>**[Media Type]**
- **[Printer Controls]**: **[General]**>**[Cut Sheet after Output]**

P. 17 About **[Queue Properties]** and **[Job Settings]**

3. **Click [OK].**

Step 3: Outputting

Step 3: Outputting

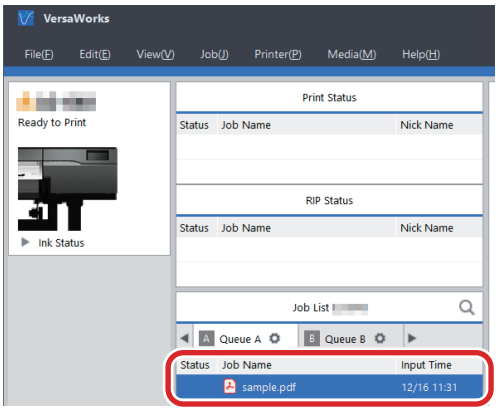
Follow the procedure below to select and print the job.

Procedure

1. **From the job list, select the job to be printed.**

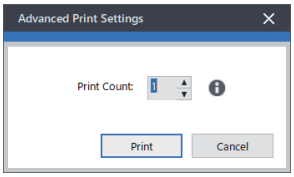
   To select multiple jobs, perform one of the following operations.

   - While holding down the shift key, click the first job, and then click the last job.
   - While holding down the ctrl key, click the jobs one by one.



2. **Click** .

   - If Printing Only Once at All Times(P. 35) is set, processing by the RIP to output is executed.
   - If the above is not set, perform the following.
     a. The [**Advanced Print Settings**] window appears. Set [**Print Count**].
     b. Click [**Print**].



   Processing by the RIP to output is executed.

   - If you want to place multiple sets of data to print in order to ensure that no media is wasted, set the [**Print Count**] to 1, and then set [**Copy**] according to the information in Setting the Number of Copies to Print(P. 97).

For jobs that have finished printing, appears in the [**Status**] field of the job list.

MEMO

You can also set the media type, print quality, and other settings in the queue folder in advance.
You can also perform only RIP processing of the print data.

Configuring the Queue Folder

This is used to make settings (dedicated settings such as specific media or request details) common to all print data added to the queue folder. In cases such as when the media used or printing specifications are the same, configuring the queue property settings will eliminate the need to configure the job settings for each piece of print data.

Configure the settings of the queue folder in the [**Queue Properties**] window.

- The settings are applied to all print data that is added to each queue folder.
- This section explains how to configure the minimum settings required for printing (the size and type of the media to use in printing and the printing quality). Configure other settings according to the application.

MEMO

If you are unfamiliar with VersaWorks operation or are not prepared to configure dedicated settings, you do not have to configure the [**Queue Properties**] settings. You can change the settings for each print data entry to print with the same settings as if you had configured the [**Queue Properties**] settings.

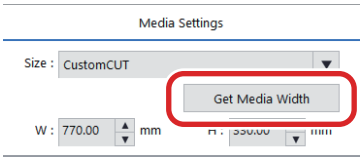
Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder to be used.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **To set the size of the material, click and perform the following procedure.**

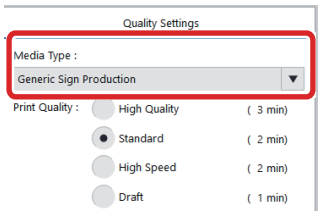
   - **Manual setup**
     - Select the desired size from [**Media Settings**]>[**Size**], and then click [**OK**].
     - If you want to specify a size, select [**CustomROLL**] or [**CustomCUT**], and then set [**W**] or [**W**] and [**H**].
   - **Automatic Setup**
     a. Set up the media.
     b. Click [**Media Settings**]>[**Get Media Width**].



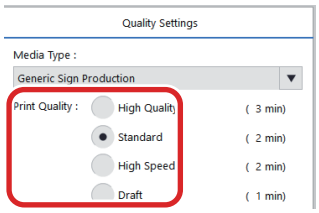
   Obtain the [**W**] or [**W**] and [**H**] for the media that has been set up, and then configure the settings.

3. **Click .**

4. **Select the type of the media to print on from the [Media Type] list.**



5. **Use [Print Quality] to select the printing quality.**



6. **Click [OK] .**

The print settings you have set are saved. You can also configure many other settings for the queue folder.

Performing Only Processing by the RIP

Convert a job saved in the queue folder to data that is suitable for printing.

Processing by the RIP takes time when there is a large amount of print data, there are many objects, or the data is complicated (such as when many transparency effects are being used). You can save time by loading the print data on the computer followed by performing tasks such as machine setup while processing by the RIP is in progress.

Procedure

1. **Add the print data to process by the RIP to the job list.**

2. **With the print data selected, perform one of the following operations to execute processing by the RIP.**

   - Click .
   - Right-click, and then click [**RIP**].

   While processing by the RIP is in progress, the status indication in the job list shows , which changes to when the processing by the RIP finishes.

   If you change the print settings for a job that has already been processed by the RIP, a confirmation window appears to ask if you want to disable RIP data (data that has been processed by the RIP).

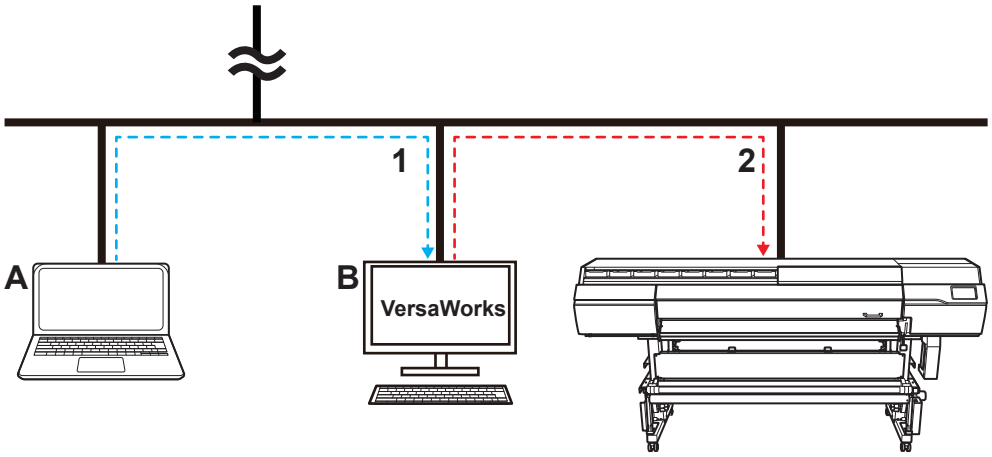
   To change the setting and process by the RIP again, select [**Yes**].

Outputting from Other Computers

When two or more computers are connected to the network, you can output from the computer (A) on which the print data is created via a computer (B) on which VersaWorks is installed.

In this situation, the computer on which VersaWorks is installed is called the "RIP server," and other computers are called "clients."

Transmit the print data created on a client to the RIP server (1). Although an image file transmitted from a client is sent to the printer via the RIP server (2), the RIP server works as a printer when viewed from a client.



A	Client	1	Print data
B	RIP server	2	Job (RIP data)

This section explains the operations for taking the data created on a client and printing it via the RIP server.

Outputting from the Windows Client

When the client (computer where the print data is created) is a Windows computer, print via the RIP server (the computer on which VersaWorks is installed).

First, check the following items:

- The printer and the computers (RIP server and client) are connected correctly and are all switched on.
- The printer is set on the RIP server (the printer is registered in VersaWorks).
- The printer is ready to print (media has been set up).

Step 1: Prepare the RIP Server

Use the [**Queue Properties**] window to set the way to process the print data received from clients.

Procedure

1. **Select the queue folder to use and click** .

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Click , and then use the [Action] list under[Action for Incoming Jobs] to set the way to process the jobs added to the RIP server.**
   - [**Do Nothing**]: Neither processing by the RIP nor printing is performed when a job is added to the job list.
   - [**RIP Only**]: Only processing by the RIP is automatically performed when a job is added to the job list.
   - [**RIP and Print**]: Both processing by the RIP and printing are automatically performed when a job is added to the job list.

3. **Click [OK] to close the [Queue Properties] window.**

Configure the client according to the OS.

- P. 73 Configure the Client Settings (Windows 11)
- P. 74 Configure the Client Settings (Windows 10)

Step 2: Configure the Client Settings (Windows 11)

Configure the output settings on the client computer.

Procedure

1. Make sure the RIP server is running, and then log on to the client computer.
2. Click [Start]>[All apps].
3. Click [Windows Tools].
4. Double-click [Control Panel].
5. Click [View devices and printers] (or [Devices and Printers]).
6. Click [Add a printer].
7. Click [The printer that I want isn't listed].
8. Select the option [Select a shared printer by name] (or [Find a printer in the directory, based on location or feature]), and then click [Next].
9. Select [\\(name of the RIP server computer)], and then click [Select].
10. Select [VersaWorks (the nickname of the printer you want to output to)], and then click [Select].
11. Click [Next].
12. When a window indicating that VersaWorks has been installed correctly is displayed, click [Next].
13. Clear the [Set as the default printer] check box, and then click [Next].
14. Perform test printing if necessary, and then click [Finish].

Step 3: Outputting

Step 2: Configure the Client Settings (Windows 10)

Configure the output settings on the client computer.

Procedure

1. Make sure the RIP server is running, and then log on to the client computer.
2. Click [Start]>[Windows System]>[Control Panel].
3. Click [View devices and printers] (or [Devices and Printers]).
4. Click [Add a printer].
5. Click [The printer that I want isn't listed].
6. Select the option [Select a shared printer by name] (or [Find a printer in the directory, based on location or feature]), and then click [Next].
7. Select [\\(name of the RIP server computer)], and then click [Select].
8. Select [VersaWorks (the nickname of the printer you want to output to)], and then click [Select].
9. Click [Next].
10. When a window indicating that VersaWorks has been installed correctly is displayed, click [Next].
11. Clear the [Set as the default printer] check box, and then click [Next].
12. Perform test printing if necessary, and then click [Finish].

Step 3: Outputting

Step 3: Outputting

Start printing from the design software that is used on the client side.

Select [**VersaWorks (the nickname of the printer you want to output to)**] as the printer. Printing operations vary depending on the design software. Refer to the instruction manual provided with the design software you are using.

RELATED LINKS

- P. 79 Windows 11, 10

Outputting from the Mac Client

When the client (computer where the print data is created) is a Mac computer, print via the RIP server (the computer on which VersaWorks is installed).

If you register the RIP server as a network printer on the client, you can send data to the RIP server for it to print. This section explains how to perform operations when using a Windows computer as the RIP server.

First, check the following items:

- The client is a Mac OS X (10.5 or later) machine.
- The user is logging on to the RIP server.
- The printer and the computers (RIP server and client) are connected correctly and are all switched on.
- The printer is set on the RIP server (the printer is registered in VersaWorks).
- The printer is ready to print (media has been set up).

Step 1: Prepare the RIP Server

Use the [**Queue Properties**] window to set the way to process the print data received from clients.

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder to be used.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Click , and then use the [Action] list under[Action for Incoming Jobs] to set the way to process the jobs added to the RIP server.**

   - [**Do Nothing**]: Neither processing by the RIP nor printing is performed when a job is added to the job list.
   - [**RIP Only**]: Only processing by the RIP is automatically performed when a job is added to the job list.
   - [**RIP and Print**]: Both processing by the RIP and printing are automatically performed when a job is added to the job list.

3. **Click [OK] to close the [Queue Properties] window.**

Step 2: Setting Up the Client

Step 2: Setting Up the Client

Procedure

1. Open the [VW_Installer] folder that was created at the time of installation.
2. Copy the PPD file to the client computer.
   - **[Mac OS X 10.13 or later]**

     Select the [**For Macintosh**]>[**PPD File**]>[**OS10.13 or later**]>[**English**] folder, and then copy the [**VERSAW.PPD**] file to any location on the computer.
   - **[Mac OS X from 10.9 to 10.12]**

     Select the [**For Macintosh**]>[**PPD File**]>[**OS10.9-10.12**]>[**English**] folder, and then copy the [**VERSAW.PPD**] file to any location on the computer.
   - **[Mac OS 10.8 or earlier]**

     Select the [**For Macintosh**]>[**PPD File**]>[**OS10.8 or earlier**]>[**English**] folder, and then copy the [**VERSAW.PPD**] file to any location on the computer.
3. Double-click the [System Preferences]>[Printers & Scanners] folder.
4. Click [+]>[Add Printer or Scanner].
5. Click [Windows]. A list appears below this item. Select the network group that the computer belongs to from the list.
6. Select the name of the RIP server's computer from the list.
7. If you are prompted for a user name and password, enter the user name and password for the RIP server, and then click [OK].
8. Select [VersaWorks (the nickname of the printer you want to output to)] from the list, and then select [Others] from the [Driver] list.
9. Select the PPD file that you copied in Step 2, and then click [Open].
10. Click [Add].

    When [**VersaWorks**] has been selected, output is made to the printer appearing at the top of the VersaWorks printer list.

Step 3: Outputting

Step 3: Outputting

Start printing from the design software that is used on the client side.

Procedure

1. **Start printing from the design software that is used on the client side.**

   Select [**VersaWorks (the nickname of the printer you want to output to)**] as the printer. If [**Authentication required**] appears in the printer's status indication, click [**Resume**] and enter the user name and password for the RIP server. Printing operations vary depending on the design software. Refer to the instruction manual provided with the design software you are using.

Outputting from Design Software

Perform output directly from your design software.

This section explains the method for outputting from ordinary design software. The output procedure is the same regardless of whether the client computer or the RIP server computer is used.

First, check the following items:

- The printer and the computers are connected correctly and are all switched on.
- The printer is ready to print (media has been set up).

Windows 11, 10

You can perform printing directly from your design software. The printing procedure is the same whether the client and RIP server are the same computer or different computers.

Procedure

1. **Start the design software, and then create a document to print or open an existing file to print.**
2. **Click [File]>[Print].**
   The [**Print**] window appears.
3. **Select [VersaWorks (the nickname of the printer you want to output to)] for the printer, and then click [Advanced] (or [Properties]).**
   The [**Print Quality**] window appears.
4. **Click [Advanced].**
   The [**VersaWorks Advanced Options**] window appears.
5. **Set the media size.**
6. **If necessary, use [Printer Function] to set the way to process the jobs added to the RIP server.**
7. **Click [OK].**
8. **Click [OK] in the [Print Quality]window.**
9. **Click [Print].**
   The print data is sent to the RIP server.

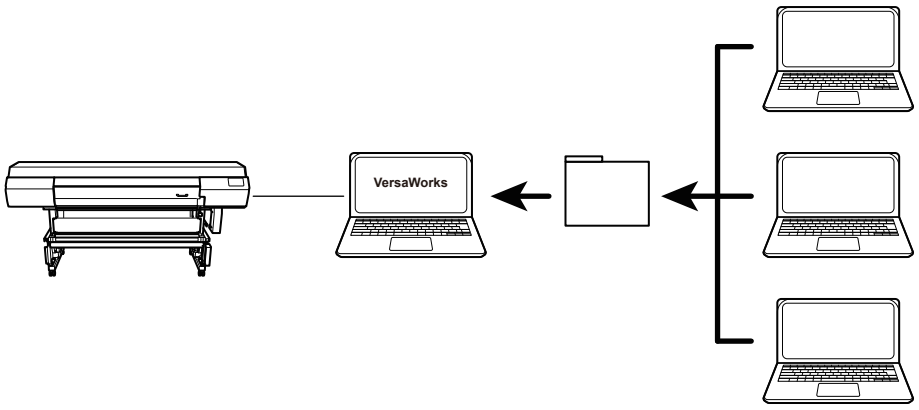
Mac OS 10.X

Procedure

1. **Start the design software, and then create a document to print or open an existing file to print.**
2. **Click [File]>[Page Settings].**
   The [**Page Settings**] window appears.
3. **Select the printer (the spooler name set on the RIP server or [VersaWorks (nickname of the printer to output to)]) with [Target Printer] and the media size with [Media Size], and then click [OK].**
4. **Click [File]>[Print].**
   The [**Print**] window appears.
5. **Use [Printer] to check the printer name, and then select [Printer function] from the list.**
6. **If necessary, set the way to process the jobs added to the RIP server.**
7. **Click [Print].**
   The print data is sent to the RIP server.

Output Using a Hot Folder

This section explains how to set the transfer of print data saved in a specified folder to the VersaWorks queue folder. Configuring this setting when print data is created on a computer that does not have VersaWorks installed, or when there are multiple print data creators, allows print data to be easily loaded into VersaWorks.



With this setting configured, you can create nested jobs in the queue folder and you can configure RIP and printing settings to allow for automation.

IMPORTANT

Print data saved in a hot folder will be deleted from the hot folder after transfer, so the source data should be saved separately.

Configuring Settings Using a Hot Folder

Procedure

1. **Create a folder on the LAN network for the same computer on which VersaWorks has been installed.**
2. **Click for the queue folder to configure settings.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.
3. **Click** .
4. **Click ... under [Input Folder].**

   The [**Select the input directory.**] window appears.
5. **Specify the hot folder.**

   Select the folder you created in Step 1 and click [Select folder].
6. **Click [OK] to close the [Queue Properties] window.**

Other Basic Operations

Canceling Processing by the RIP and Printing 83
Canceling Processing by the RIP and Printing in Progress 83
Previewing Print Data 84
Switching between Pages in the Preview Display 85
Switching the Layout Area View on the [**Job Settings**] Window 86
Deleting Jobs and Intermediate Files 87
Deleting Jobs 87
Deleting the Intermediate Files of a Job 87
Searching for Jobs 88
Checking and Saving the Job Log Information 89
View the Job Log Information 89
Save the Job Log Information 91

Canceling Processing by the RIP and Printing

Cancels printing and processing by the RIP. However, you cannot interrupt a job in VersaWorks if it has already been sent to the printer. An operation on the printer side will be necessary.

Canceling Processing by the RIP and Printing in Progress

Cancel the processing by the RIP or printing in progress.

Procedure

1. **Click during processing by the RIP or during printing.**
   - Processing by the RIP: The processing by the RIP is canceled.
   - Print: The sending of the print data is canceled.
2. **To cancel the printing of data that has already been sent to the printer, cancel printing on the printer.**
   For the printer's operating instructions, refer to the instruction manual of your printer.

Previewing Print Data

The preview of print data is displayed in the top window and [**Job Settings**] window.

You can check the media for items such as the printing position, the placement of multiple jobs, the addition of labels and marks, the output of spot color plates, and cutting lines.

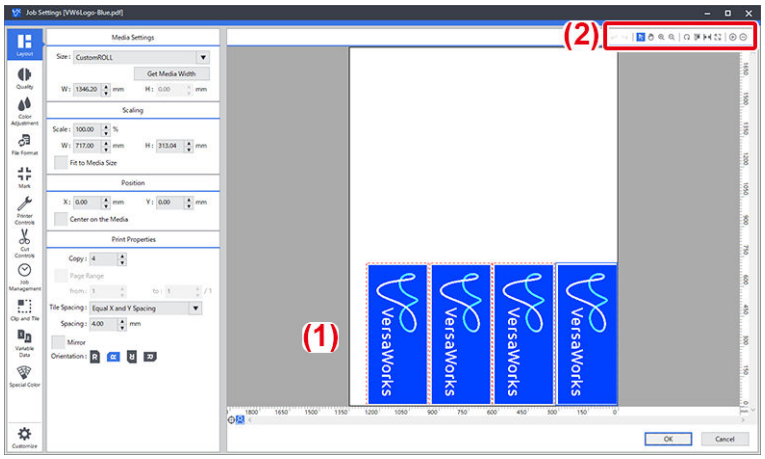
The preview display can be changed in the [Job Settings] window.

Changing the preview display

Double-click a job in the job list or otherwise to open the [**Job Settings**] window.

A preview of the job is displayed in the layout area (1) on the right side.

The following tools are displayed at the top of the layout area (2) and can be used to change the preview display.



Icon	Tool name	Operation
	[**Undo Tool**]	Returns the operation to the previous state.
	[**Redo Tool**]	Redoes the undone operation.
	[**Selection Tool**]	Click the preview image in the layout area to highlight the preview image of the selected job with a light blue border. Then, you can drag the selected preview image to a new location in order to set its printing position.
	[**Hand Tool**]	Drag when zoomed in to move the image.
	[**Zoom Tool**]	Specify the area to enlarge by dragging the mouse pointer. You can also enlarge an area by clicking it in the layout area.
	[**Zoom Tool**]	After enlarging an area, click in the layout area to zoom out.
	[**Rearrange Tiles**]	Click this tool after changing the placement of a job with the [**Selection Tool**] to place the job again and conserve media with the [**Layout**] tab settings.
	[**Align Tiles**]	Click this tool after changing the placement of a job with the [**Selection Tool**] to align the print start position with the reference.
	[**Fit to Width**]	Matches the width of the media to the width of the layout area.
	[**Fit to Page**]	Changes the width and length of the media so they can be displayed in the layout area. Roll media and vertically long jobs are matched to the width of the layout area.
	[**Zoom-In**]	Zooms in.
	[**Zoom-Out**]	Zooms out.

Switching between Pages in the Preview Display

Configure the [**Job Settings**] layout area display settings. Use [**Show Per Page**] or [**Show Multiple Pages**] to switch the display method for multiple pages.

When roll media is specified with [**Media Settings**], these icons are not displayed.

Procedure

1. **Double-click a job in the job list or otherwise open the [Job Settings] window.**
2. **Check the bottom of the layout area.**

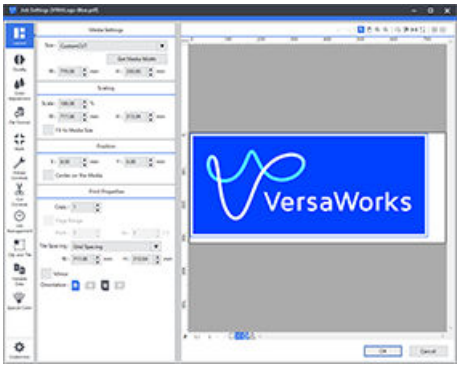
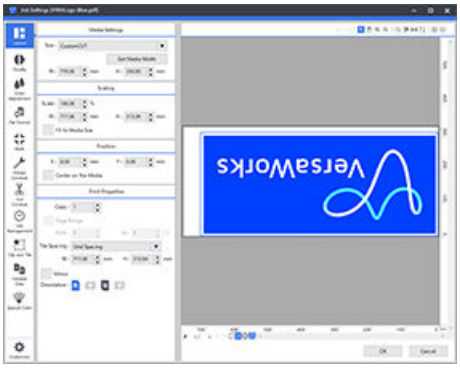
Icon	Display method	Description
	[**Show Per Page**]	Multiple pages of print data are displayed on a single page. Click < > on the left side to switch between pages.
	[**Show Multiple Pages**]	Multiple pages of print data are displayed on consecutive pages. Use the scroll bar or click < > on the left side to switch between pages.

3. **Click the icon of the page to set.**

   The icon background changes to blue, and the specified page is displayed in the preview image.
4. **Click [OK] to close the [Job Settings] window.**

Switching the Layout Area View on the [Job Settings] Window

This section explains how to switch the orientation of the preview displayed in the [**Job Settings**] layout area.

	[Origin View]	[User View]
Icon		
Layout area		

MEMO

Changing this setting does not change the orientation of the preview that is displayed in the layout area on the right side of the top window, which remains set to [**Origin View**].

Procedure

1. **In the job list, double-click the job.**

   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

2. **Click the view icon at the bottom of the layout area.**

   - : [**Origin View**]

     The preview is displayed with the orientation of the print data.

   - : [**User View**]

     The preview is displayed with the printing orientation (rotated by 180 degrees from the orientation of the print data).

   The icon background changes to blue, and the preview image is displayed with the specified orientation.

3. **Click [OK] to close the [Job Settings] window.**

   MEMO

   The setting values of [**Position**], [**Orientation**], etc. are changed to the value of [**Origin View**].

Deleting Jobs and Intermediate Files

If you keep all the jobs and their intermediate files (data that has been processed by the RIP and files whose setting details have been saved), the computer will run out of space. Clean up the queue folders as necessary. Refer to Saving and Reusing Printed Jobs(P. 156) to save jobs and intermediate files that may be reprinted in the future.

Perform the following to delete jobs and intermediate files after printing is finished.

Deleting Jobs

Deletes the selected job from the job list. You can delete multiple jobs at the same time. However, you cannot delete individual jobs in a nested job.

Procedure

1. **From the job list, select the job to be deleted.**

   To select multiple jobs, perform one of the following operations:

   - While holding down the shift key, click the first job, and then click the last job.
   - While holding down the ctrl key, click the jobs one by one.

2. **Click  or right-click the selected job and click [Delete].**

   The confirmation window appears.

3. **Click [Yes] .**

   The selected job is deleted.

Deleting the Intermediate Files of a Job

Deletes intermediate files of a job (data that has been processed by the RIP and files whose setting details have been saved).

Procedure

1. **From the job list, select the job whose intermediate files will be deleted.**

   To select multiple jobs, perform one of the following operations:

   - While holding down the shift key, click the first job, and then click the last job.
   - While holding down the ctrl key, click the jobs one by one.
   - Drag the mouse pointer over multiple jobs.

2. **Click  or right-click the selected job and click [Clear].**

   The data processed by the RIP will be deleted, and the ✓ icon in the status indication will disappear.
   The printing settings configured on the job are deleted, and the settings from the [**Queue Properties**] window when the deletion was carried out are applied.

Searching for Jobs

You can list all the jobs and search for them in VersaWorks.

Procedure

1. **Click to the right of the top-most job list.**

   The [**Find Job**] window opens with all jobs displayed.

   MEMO

   Click the target list title [**Nickname**], [**Queue**], [**Job Name**], or[**Input Time**], to sort the list items in ascending or descending order.

2. **To search for a job, enter the text in the [Find What] field.**

   To delete the entered search, click [**Clear**].

3. **Click [Search].**

   The jobs appear. When you select a job, the job list printer and the corresponding job are also selected.

   MEMO

   Click the target list title [**Nickname**], [**Queue**], [**Job Name**], or[**Input Time**], to sort the list items in ascending or descending order.

4. **Click [OK] to close the [Find Job] window.**

Checking and Saving the Job Log Information

You can view the information about jobs processed in VersaWorks, such as their contents and the date and time when they were processed, in the [**Job Log**] window. Jobs can be sorted and filtered in this window, and more detailed information can also be checked.

You can save the log information to a CSV file or as XML file format. You can open the saved data with spreadsheet software or other software, and use it to check ink consumption and print time.

View the Job Log Information

Display the [**Job Log**] window.

Procedure

1. Click [View]>[Job Log] on the menu bar.

The [**Job Log**] window appears. This window includes the following information.

[**Event**]	Type of process that is being performed or that has been completed
[**Nickname**]	Printer model name or the nickname
[**Job Name**]	Print data name
[**Size**]	Print data size
[**Print Area**]	Size of the printed width and height
[**Ink Consumption**]	Amount of ink used to print*1
[**Start Time**]	Date and time that the process shown in [**Event**] was started
[**End Time**]	Date and time that the process shown in [**Event**] finished
[**Details**]	Information such as the error category and cause (if an error occurs during the processing of the job)

*1 Displayed when processing by the RIP is performed.

MEMO

- In the [**Job Log**] window, click a column title in the table such as [**Event**], [**Nickname**], or [**Job Name**] to sort that item in ascending or descending order.
- P. 91 Save the Job Log Information
  The above is available.

2. To filter the [Job Log], click .

The [**Filter Conditions**] window appears. You can filter on the following items.

- [**Date**]
- [**Nickname**]
- [**Job Name**]
- [**Setting**]
- [**Processing Result**]

3. To view more detailed information about a job, select the job's log entry, and then click or double-click .

The [**Detailed Job Log**] appears.

[Event]	Type of process that is being performed or that has been completed
[Nickname]	Printer model name or the nickname
[Job Name]	Print data name
[Size]	Print data size
[Page Size]	Size of the page
[Media Type]	The type of media used
[Copy]	Number of copies printed*2
[Print Area]	Size of the printed width and height
[Input Time]	Date and time when the print data was registered in the queue folder*3
[RIP Start Time]	Date and time when processing by the RIP started
[RIP End Time]	Date and time when processing by the RIP finished
[Print Start Time]	Date and time when printing started
[Print End Time]	Date and time when printing finished
[Setting]	Name of the folder where the job is registered
[Ink Consumption]	Total amount of ink consumed in printing and amount of ink consumed for each color
[Details]	Information such as the error category and cause (if an error occurs during the processing of the job)

*2 If not printed, the specified number of copies printed.

*3 Deleted when processing by the RIP or printing is performed.

4. To close the [Detailed Job Log] window, click .

Save the Job Log Information

Save the Job Log Information

Save the information in the [**Detailed Job Log**] window.

Procedure

1. **Select the log entry to save in the [Job Log] window.**
   To select multiple jobs, perform one of the following operations:
   - While holding down the shift key, click the first job, and then click the last job.
   - While holding down the ctrl key, click the jobs one by one.

2. **Click**  **.**
   The [**Save As**] window appears.

3. **Enter a name into the [File Name] box, and then select a file format from the [File type] list.**
   You can set the file format to CSV (comma-delimited values) or XML.

4. **Click [Save...].**
   The file is saved to the location that you specified.

5. **To close the [Job Log] window, click**  **.**

Output Settings

Alignment and Control Settings

Layout Settings 94
- Set the size of the material. 94
- Scaling Jobs for Printing 95
- Setting the Printing Position 96
- Setting the Number of Copies to Print 97
- Setting the Spacing from the Adjacent Image 98
- Mirroring the Image 100
- Rotating the Image 101
- Adjusting the Printing Position in the Layout Area 102

Printer Control Settings 104
- Cutting the Media after Output 104
- Setting the Space to the Next Printing Start Location 105
- Determining How to Alleviate Horizontal Bands: [**Feed Calibration Controls**] 106
- Using Media That Wrinkles Easily/Does Not Move Smoothly: [**Vacuum Power**] 107
- Setting the Drying Time after Printing 108
- Adjusting Print Head Height to Match Media Thickness 109
- Setting the Heater/Dryer Temperature 110
- Correcting the Dimensions in the Printing Results 111
- Reducing the UV Lamp Illumination Intensity 112
- Performing Only UV Lamp Illumination 113
- Adding Jobs That Perform Only UV Lamp Illumination after Printing 114
- Limit the print heads used for printing: [**Nozzle Mask**] 115

Layout Settings

This section explains how to arrange jobs on the media. In some cases, the control setting is set in the queue folder, and in other cases, it is set in each print data. Set the control setting as appropriate for your situation.

Set the size of the material.

This section explains how to set the size of the media to be used on the queue folder.

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder to be used.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **When media is set up on the printer side, click [Get Media Width] in [Media Settings].**

   VersaWorks obtains the information about the width of the printable area from the printer and sets [**W**] automatically. On the flat table model, [**W**] and [**H**] are set automatically.

   To specify [**H**] on models other than the flat table model, select [**CustomCUT**] for the [**Size**] and input the [**H**].

4. **Click [OK] to close the [Queue Properties] window.**

MEMO

These settings can also be customized per job using the [**Job Settings**] window.

Scaling Jobs for Printing

This section explains how to configure the settings in order to enlarge or reduce jobs, not queue folders, for printing. Because the [**W**] and [**H**] of the [**Scaling**] differ in their respective print data, they cannot be changed in [**Queue Properties**].

The horizontal to vertical ratio also cannot be changed.

Procedure

1. **In the job list, double-click the job.**

   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **Select the scaling method from [Scaling].**

   - [**Scale**]

     Enlarges or reduces the job by the specified scaling factor.

   - [**W**] or [**H**]

     Enlarges or reduces the job to the specified size. Entering one value will automatically set the other one.

   - [**Fit to Media Size**]

     Select the check box to automatically enlarge or reduce the job to match the paper size set in [**Media Settings**]. The scaling factor changes depending on the job orientation specified with [**Direction**] under [**Print Quality**].

4. **Click [OK] to close the [Job Settings] window.**

   When you start printing, the job is printed with the set size.

Setting the Printing Position

Even when the printing position that was set for the printer is not changed, the printing position can be changed in the horizontal and vertical directions with VersaWorks. This setting can be made on the job or on the queue folder.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. **Click**  .

3. **Under [Position], perform one of the following operations:**
   - Enter the values in [**X**] and [**Y**].
     - The job is moved by the specified offset in relation to the job list layout area window's upper left corner (lower right of set up media). [X] sets the right distance and [Y] sets the downward distance. The actual printing will be output rotated 180°, so horizontal movement will be to the left and vertical movement will be to the top.
   - Select the [**Center on the Media**] check box.
     - When using roll media, the job is moved to the horizontal center of the media. When using sheet media or standard-size media, the job is moved to the horizontal and vertical center of the media.

   MEMO

   When changes are made in [**Job Settings**], you can check the changed position in the layout area.

4. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

     The changes are reflected in the layout area of the top window.

   MEMO

   If, after printing, you are performing laminating followed by cutting (block & cut), clear the [**Center on the Media**] check box. If the [**Center on the Media**] check box is selected, the printing and cutting positions may be misaligned.

Setting the Number of Copies to Print

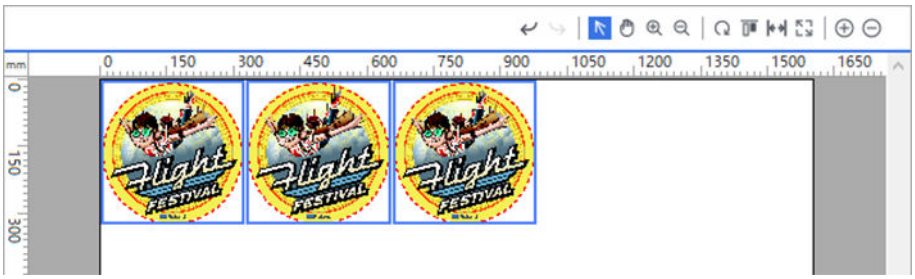
Sets the number of copies to print. This setting can be made on the job or on the queue folder.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. **Click** .

3. **Enter the number of copies to print in [Print Properties]>[Copy].**
   - When changes are made in [**Job Settings**], they are reflected in the layout area.



4. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click . The changes are reflected in the layout area of the top window.



Setting the Spacing from the Adjacent Image

When printing multiple images adjacent to one another, the spacing between one image and the neighboring image can be set. This setting can be made on the job or on the queue folder.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. **Click** .

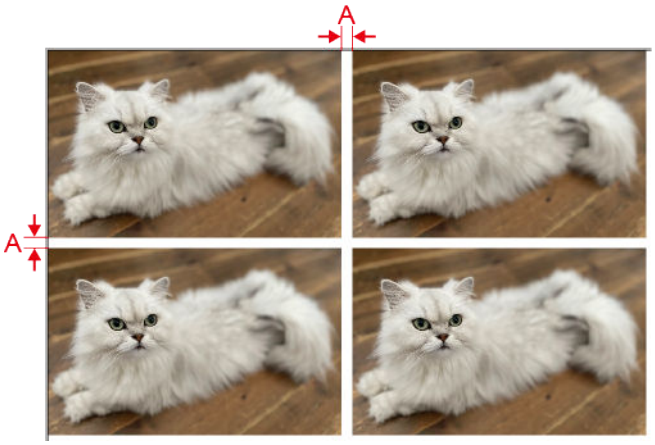
3. **Specify the values for [Tile Spacing] and [Spacing] with [Print Properties].**

   MEMO

   The items that can be selected vary depending on the printer.

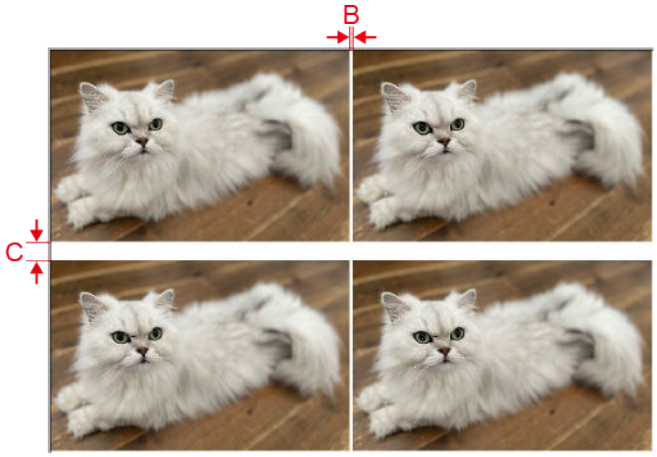
   - **[Equal X and Y Spacing]**

     Specifies the [**Spacing**] from the adjacent image. The same vertical and horizontal [**Spacing**] (A) can be specified.



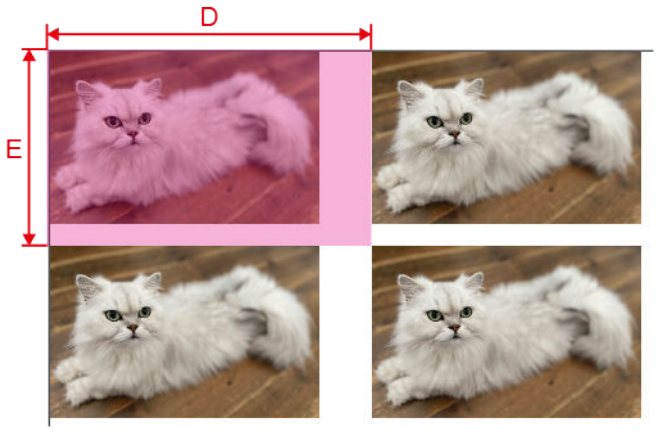
   - **[Separate X and Y Spacing]**

     Specifies the spacing from the adjacent image. Separate values can be specified for [**X**] (B) and [**Y**] (C).



- **[Grid Spacing]**

  Specify the value of the image size plus the spacing from the adjacent image. Specify values separately for **[W]** (D) and **[H]** (E).



4. **Click [OK].**

- Any changes made in **[Job Settings]** will be applied.
- When changes are made in **[Queue Properties]**:
  a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click **[Yes]**.
  b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click . The changes are reflected in the layout area of the top window.

Mirroring the Image

Set when printing the image reversed in order to print for transfers or when printing on transparent media when the image will be viewed from the opposite side of the printed surface.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.
2. **Click**  **.**
3. **Select the [Print Properties]>[Mirror] check box.**
4. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

     The changes are reflected in the layout area of the top window.

Rotating the Image

Print the image rotated in 90° units. By printing a portrait image sideways, it is possible to reduce media use. However rotation is not possible in directions where the image exceeds the media size.

Because the size here varies depending on the print data, configure this for the job.

Procedure

1. **In the job list, double-click the job.**

   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

2. **Click**  .

3. **The direction for job printing can be selected from the following icons under [Print Properties]>[Direction].**

Icon	Direction
	Top
	Left
	Bottom
	Right

MEMO

It is not possible to change to horizontal orientation when [**Tile Spacing**] is [**Grid Spacing**]. Change [Tile Spacing] to [**Equal X and Y Spacing**] or [**Separate X and Y Spacing**].

4. **Click [OK] to close the [Job Settings] window.**

   The change will be applied.

Adjusting the Printing Position in the Layout Area

This section explains how to set the printing position while checking it in the layout area in the [**Job Settings**] window. Use this function to rearrange nested jobs, to change the order of multiple print runs to cut the same number of prints, and similar situations.



Procedure

1. **In the job list, double-click the job.**
   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **Click**  **at the top of the layout area.**

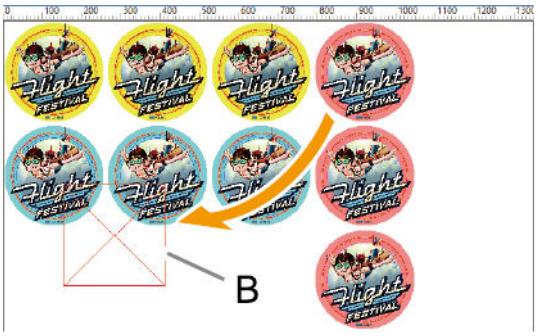
4. **Click a preview in the layout area to select it.**
   The preview image of the selected job is highlighted with a light blue border (A).



MEMO

Select multiple jobs by clicking the preview images while holding down the shift key or by dragging the mouse pointer over the preview images.

5. **Drag the selected preview image to a new location in order to set its printing position.**
   Jobs cannot overlap each other. If you drag a preview image onto another job, a red box (B) appears as shown in the figure.



6. **Click [OK] .**

You can check the job's printing position in the layout area of the top window.

Printer Control Settings

This section explains how to configure the control setting of your printer from VersaWorks. In some cases, the control setting is set in the queue folder, and in other cases, it is set in each print data. Set the control setting as appropriate for your situation.

Generally, the VersaWorks settings are used if the settings differ between your printer and VersaWorks. However, depending on the model, its settings may be prioritized for certain functions, and the displayed functions may differ.

MEMO

To apply changes to the above settings to print data already in the queue folders, perform [**Clear**] for the print data.

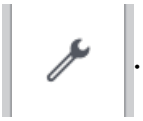
Cutting the Media after Output

This section explains how to cut away the media after printing.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click  for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. **Click**  .

3. **Select the [General]>[Cut Sheet after Output] check box.**

   MEMO

   Depending on the model, you may be able to select [**Perforated Sheet Cutting**].

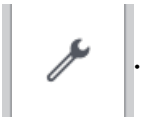
4. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click  .

Setting the Space to the Next Printing Start Location

This section explains how to set the margin between jobs when printing jobs consecutively on roll media. The margin default values are set in the printer.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.
2. **Click**  .
3. **Select the [General]>[Use Custom Settings] check box.**
4. **Set the [Page Space].**
5. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .
     The changes are reflected in the layout area of the top window.

Determining How to Alleviate Horizontal Bands: [Feed Calibration Controls]

This section explains how to configure the settings in order to use [**Feed Calibration Controls**] to alleviate the horizontal bands that occur during printing.

When feed calibration is performed on the printer side, and [**Use Printer Settings**] is set on the VersaWorks side, the printer-side feed calibration value is applied.

You can set the results from measurement of the feed calibration value at the printer with [**Use Custom Settings**]>[**Feed Calibration**] in VersaWorks.

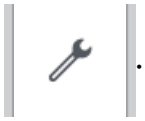
MEMO

When using non-genuine media, you need to configure the feed calibration on the printer or in VersaWorks.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click  for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **Use [Feed Calibration Controls] to select the control method.**

[**Use Default Media Settings**]	Printing is performed with the recommended values for the media selected with [**Media Type**] under [**Quality Settings**].
[**Use Custom Settings**]	Printing is performed with the values set in this window.
[**Use Printer Settings**]*1	Printing is performed with the settings configured on the printer.

*1 Default value

4. **If you select [Use Custom Settings], enter the [Feed Calibration].**

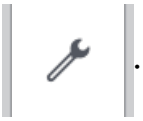
5. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click  .

Using Media That Wrinkles Easily/Does Not Move Smoothly: [Vacuum Power]

Set the intensity of the vacuum that holds the media flat on the platen. Increase the [**Vacuum Power**] when rigid media gets warped or lifts up after wrinkling and decrease it when using media soft and smooth media. In this way, you may be able to improve the feeding of the media. It may be possible to configure advanced settings for the suction fan from the printer side.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.
2. **Click**  **.**
3. **Select [Use Custom Settings] for [Other Controls].**
4. **Set the [Vacuum Power].**
5. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

Setting the Drying Time after Printing

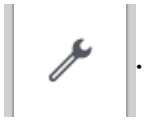
You can set the time to dry out the media by setting the time (in minutes) to wait before printing the next page or cutting after a printing operation finishes.

For example, when you need the printed surface to be completely dry when performing printing and cutting (print & cut), it is effective to set a long drying time.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **Select [Use Custom Settings] for [Other Controls].**

4. **Set the [Dry Time].**

5. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

Adjusting Print Head Height to Match Media Thickness

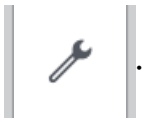
This section explains how to adjust the print head height to match the media thickness.

The height of the print head is set with [**Quality**]>[**Media Type**]. Changing this height may affect the printing quality. Normally do not change this setting.

However when printing on thick media and when swelling occurred due to drying after printing, the distance between the print heads and the print surface will be smaller than the intended value. Depending on the circumstances, the print head may contact the media. In order to avoid this, change the height of the print head. If the print head height on the printer and the setting are different, a message may be displayed on the printer. In this situation, make the settings the same.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.
2. **Click**  .
3. **Select [Use Custom Settings] for [Other Controls].**
4. **Set the [Head Height].**
5. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .
6. **Set the head height to the same setting on the printer side.**

Setting the Heater/Dryer Temperature

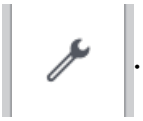
Normally, the settings for the media-drying devices such as the printer's heater and dryer are configured from the printer. For this reason, [**Use Printer Settings**] is the default setting for [**Printer Controls**]>[**Heater Controls**]. In addition, [**Use Default Media Settings**] may be the default option depending on the model.

However, you can set the temperature of the heater and dryer while configuring the various settings in VersaWorks.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. **Click**  .

3. **Select [Use Custom Settings] for [Heater Controls].**

   The check boxes will be selected, and you can set the temperatures of the devices. Clear the check boxes to turn off the devices. Depending on the model you are using, some setting items may not be displayed.
   - [**Pre Heater**]
   - [**Print Heater**]
   - [**Dryer**]

4. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

Correcting the Dimensions in the Printing Results

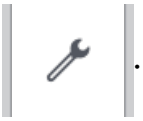
Print data and printing size may change due to factors such as thermal expansion of the media after printing. In this case, you can correct a shifted printing result by correcting the horizontal and vertical sizes of the job dimensions.

If you enter the measured sizes (the actual print size) and the expected sizes (the size to be printed), the correction factors can be automatically calculated and easily set. You can also enter the correction factors directly.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Measure the size of the printed output.**
2. **In the job list, double-click the job.**

   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.
3. **Click**  **.**
4. **Click [Print Size Correction]>[Correction Calculator].**

   The [**Correction Calculator**] window appears.
5. **In [Expected Size] and [Measured Size], enter the sizes in the horizontal and vertical directions.**
   - [**Expected Size**]: Enter the size to be printed.
   - [**Measured Size**]: Enter the measured size of the printing result.

   This is automatically calculated on the basis of the values entered in [**Correction Factor**]. However, the correction factors can be set within a range of −5.00% to +5.00%.
6. **Click [OK].**

   The [**Correction Calculator**] window closes. Verify that the correction factor is reflected in the horizontal and vertical values.
7. **Click [OK].**

MEMO

- You can also enter the correction factors directly.
- You can also configure the same setting in the [**Queue Properties**] window. To apply the correction to an existing job after configuring settings, select the job and click  .

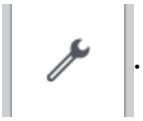
Reducing the UV Lamp Illumination Intensity

Depending on the media, the standard illumination intensity may be too strong, affecting the printing quality. Additionally, there are printing methods where it is desirable to not cure the ink, allowing for decoration. This section explains how to configure the settings to reduce the illumination intensity of the UV lamp in these situations.

If you change [**Media Type**], [**Print Quality**], [**Resolution**], or [**Mode**] after configuring settings, set the illumination intensity again.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.
2. **Click**  .
3. **Select the [Change UV Lamp Irradiation Intensity] check box under [UV Lamp Control].**
4. **When a window warning you about changing the illumination intensity appears, click [OK].**
5. **Set the [Illumination Intensity].**
6. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

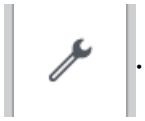
Performing Only UV Lamp Illumination

Depending on the media and the print data, the ink may not be fully cured just by the UV illumination during printing. Therefore use this procedure to fully cure ink to its center and as post-processing to special printing in which the ink is not fully cured.

Follow the procedure below and configure the settings so that only the same UV illumination as during printing is performed after printing.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **In the job list, double-click the job.**
   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.
2. **Click**  **.**
3. **Select [UV Post Cure Only] for [Operation Mode] under [UV Lamp Control].**
4. **As necessary, use [Scan Speed] to set the print head movement speed.**
5. **Click [OK] to close the [Job Settings] window.**
   The job icon in the job list changes to  .
6. **Click**  **.**
   Only UV lamp illumination is performed.

Adding Jobs That Perform Only UV Lamp Illumination after Printing

This section explains how to duplicate a job to add a job that performs only UV lamp illumination. This procedure is useful in situations such as when you want to retain a job to print as a separate job. Adding a job where only UV lamp illumination is performed after printing will efficiently allow additional UV illumination.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Right-click a job in the job list, and then click [Duplicate]>[UV Illumination Job].**

   The [**UV Illumination Job**] window appears.

2. **Enter the job's name, and then click [OK].**

   The job is duplicated, and the duplicate job performs only UV illumination. The icon of the duplicate job is  .

   If there are multiple jobs in the job list, the duplicate job is added at the bottom of the list.

   MEMO

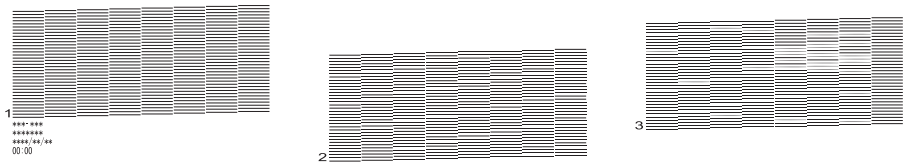
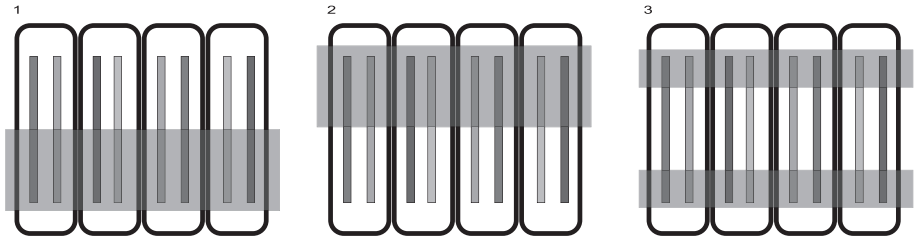
   If you want to perform only UV illumination after printing, group the jobs before outputting them.

   P. 152 Outputting Multiple Jobs at Once

Limit the print heads used for printing: [Nozzle Mask]

When discharge issues on the printer such as dot drop-out and dot displacement are not improved, partially restrict the print heads to use for printing (i.e. prevent the use of the print heads that are causing discharge issues). This operation is called the "nozzle mask," and while it slows down printing speed, it also allows you to decrease the impact of dot drop-out or dot displacement. This is an emergency measure that should be used when you have to prioritize order delivery.

First, use the printer's menu to perform a printing test for the nozzle mask (A). With this printing test, a test pattern is printed for each nozzle group (1.2.3). The grouped print heads are shown in the figure (B). Test printing is performed with the lower half of the nozzle masked (1), the upper half of the nozzle masked (2), and the upper and lower 1/4 of the nozzle masked (3).

Nozzle mask test pattern	A 
Print heads used*1	B 

*1 The gray parts in the figure at right show the print head parts that are not used (masked).

According to the printing test result, print with the nozzle group that has the least discharge issues.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform a printing test for the nozzle mask.**
   Select the nozzle group with the fewest discharge defects from the printing test results.
2. **Click [Printer]>[Printer Settings].**
   The [**Printer Settings**] window appears.
3. **From the [Printer List], select the printer whose print heads will be limited.**
4. **Click [Advanced].**
   The [**Advanced**] window appears.
5. **Select the nozzle group to use in printing from the printing-test results.**
6. **Click [OK] to close the [Advanced] window.**
7. **Click [OK] to close the [Printer Settings] window.**
   is displayed next to the status icon of a printer where the settings were changed.

When printing for which delivery is prioritized is finished, take action to correct the discharge defects.

Quality/Output Color Settings

Setting the Printing Quality 118
- Setting the Halftone 118
- Selecting the Interpolation Used for Scaling 119
- Setting the Direction of the Print Head 120
- Setting the Print Head Speed 121
- Setting the Optimizer Ink Amount 122

Adjusting the Output Colors 123
- Visually Selecting the Color Settings: [**Quick Setup**] 123
- Selecting the Color Setting from the List 125
- Adjusting the Color Saturation, Contrast, and Brightness of the Entire Image 127
- Adjusting the Tone Curve 128
- Customizing the Color Settings 131
- Matching Different Printer Output Colors 134
- Obtaining a Stable Output Color 136

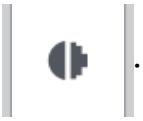
Setting the Printing Quality

Setting the Halftone

The following two RIP processing methods are available.

- [**Dither**]: A screening method that uses a specific dithering pattern to yield fast processing by the RIP. It results in comparatively stable colors.
- [**Error Diffusion**]: The finishing of finer details such as the granulation and the thin line image quality improves, but the time required for processing by the RIP is longer than when [Dither] is used. Rarely, this method may result in strange colors.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.
2. **Click**  .
3. **Select the media to use in printing from [Media Type].**
4. **Use [Print Quality] to select the printing quality.**

   If [**Resolution**] and [**Mode**] are selectable, select those as well.

   The available parameters for [**Resolution**] and [**Mode**] vary depending on the media setting in the [**Media Explorer**] window.
5. **Select [Dither] or [Error Diffusion] from [Halftone].**

   The [**Halftone Options**] button is only enabled when the [**Angled Screen**] setting is included in the mode to use for printing.

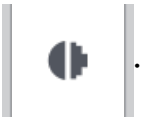
   Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.
6. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

Selecting the Interpolation Used for Scaling

The following three interpolation methods are available when scaling the image.

- [**Nearest Neighbor**]: The image easily becomes coarse when it is zoomed in on and blurry when it is zoomed out from, but the processing speed is high. The accuracy is lowest.
- [**Bi-Linear**]: Standard quality and processing speed.
- [**Bi-Cubic**]: Lowest image degradation during scaling but low processing speed.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.
2. **Click**  .
3. **Select the media to use in printing from [Media Type].**
4. **Use [Print Quality] to select the printing quality.**

   If [**Resolution**] and [**Mode**] are selectable, select those as well.

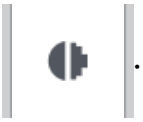
   The available parameters for [**Resolution**] and [**Mode**] vary depending on the media setting in the [**Media Explorer**] window.
5. **Select the interpolation to use for the job scaling ([Nearest Neighbor], [Bi-Linear], or [Bi-Cubic]) from [Interpolation].**
6. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

Setting the Direction of the Print Head

You can configure one of the following two settings with [**Direction**] on models whose print head can print in the outbound and return passes.

- [**Bi-Direction**]: When the print head moves, printing will be performed in both the outbound pass and return pass. The printing time is shorter than [**Uni-Direction**], but printing is affected by the thickness of the media, so you have to adjust the misalignment of the ink landing position on the machine.
- [**Uni-Direction**]: Printing will only be performed in the outbound pass (depending on the model, printing may only be performed in the return pass). The printing time is longer but the quality is higher. With this setting, there is no need to make adjustments on the machine.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.
2. **Click**  **.**
3. **Select the media to use in printing from [Media Type].**
4. **Use [Print Quality] to select the printing quality.**

   If [**Resolution**] and [**Mode**] are selectable, select those as well.

   The available parameters for [**Resolution**] and [**Mode**] vary depending on the media setting in the [**Media Explorer**] window.
5. **Select [Bi-Direction] or [Uni-Direction] from [Direction].**
6. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

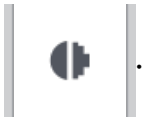
Setting the Print Head Speed

This section explains how to set the print head's movement speed during printing ([**Head Speed**]).

Increasing [**Head Speed**] will shorten the printing time but lower the image quality. Decreasing [**Head Speed**] will have the opposite effect.

Consider the balance between printing time and image quality when setting this value.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.
2. **Click**  **.**
3. **Select the media to use in printing from [Media Type].**
4. **Use [Print Quality] to select the printing quality.**

   If [**Resolution**] and [**Mode**] are selectable, select those as well.

   The available parameters for [**Resolution**] and [**Mode**] vary depending on the media setting in the [**Media Explorer**] window.
5. **Select the [Ignore Default Settings] check box.**
6. **Enter the print head speed in the [Head Speed] box or use**  **to set the speed.**

   The entered value will be set to the maximum value or minimum value if it exceeds or is below the range of settable values.
7. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

Setting the Optimizer Ink Amount

The printing quality of water-based resin inks is affected by factors such as the media, temperature, and humidity.

It is recommended to perform test printing with multiple optimizer ink levels and set the optimizer ink amount to the level that provides the optimal image quality before performing actual printing.

MEMO

If jobs with different optimizer ink levels have been set as a nested job, the message [**A different value has been set for each job.**] appears.

To perform actual printing, not test printing, with a nested job, set all the jobs to the same optimizer ink level.

Performing Test Printing to Determine the Optimizer Ink Amount

Perform test printing of multiple jobs with different optimizer ink levels and determine the level that provides the optimal image quality.

Procedure

1. **Right-click the job for test printing, then click [Duplicate]>[Duplicate Job].**
2. **Double-click the duplicated job.**
   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.
3. **Click**  **.**
4. **Specify the [Optimizer Level].**
   The setting range is −5 to +5.
5. **Repeat Steps 1 to 4 to create multiple jobs with different optimizer ink amounts.**
6. **Select multiple jobs, right-click, and then click [Nest].**
   A nested job is created.
7. **Print the nested job.**
8. **Check the printing results and determine the optimizer ink amount that provides the optimal image quality.**

Adjusting the Output Colors

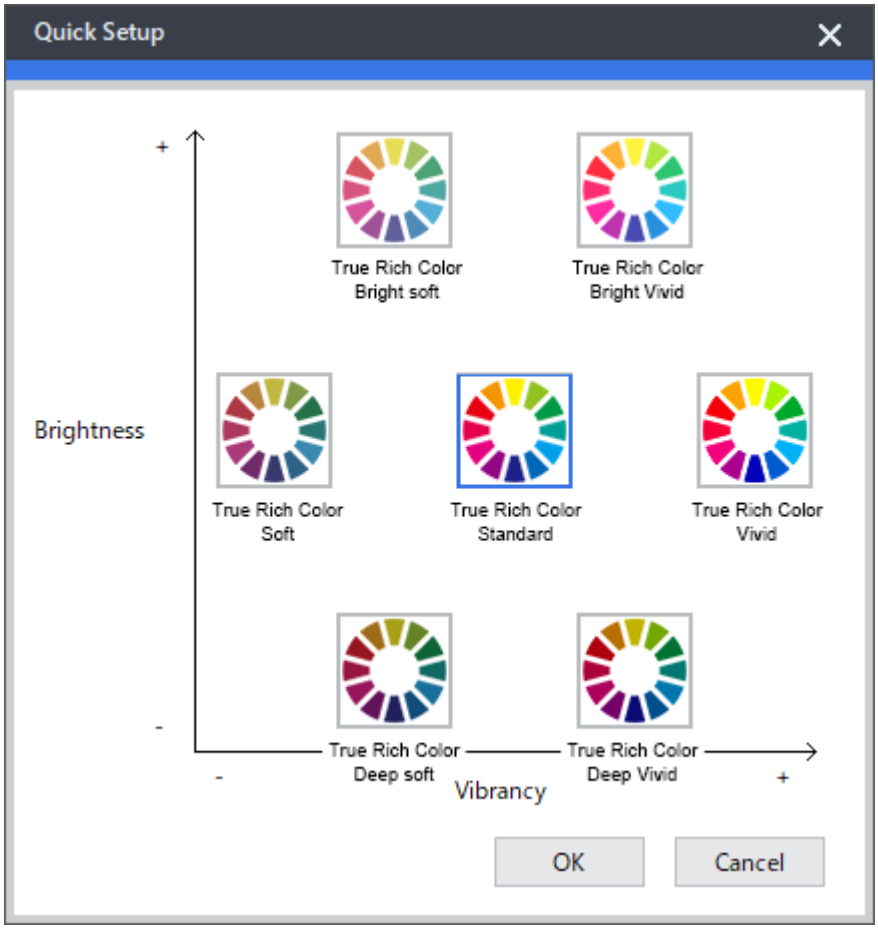
This section explains how to adjust the overall coloring of an image by selecting and customizing color settings, or by adjusting color saturation, contrast, brightness, tone curves, and other properties.

Color settings are preset combinations of input profiles and matching methods necessary for color management. You can control the overall color of the printed material by setting these input profiles and matching methods. In VersaWorks, you can perform color management by selecting the color settings.

You can adjust the density of each ink and the overall contrast and brightness as desired with [**Level Adjustment**]. In addition, adjustments to the tone curve enable more subtle adjustments.

Visually Selecting the Color Settings: [Quick Setup]

Visually select the color setting from seven color settings using [**Brightness**] and [**Vibrancy**].



Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. **Click** .

3. **Click [Color Settings]>[Quick Setup].**
   A graph is displayed in which the seven color settings are arranged.

4. **Select the desired Color Management setting.**
   The selected Color Management setting will be surrounded by a blue border.

5. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click  .

Selecting the Color Setting from the List

Select the color setting from the following options.

[**True Rich Color Bright Vivid**]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors with high saturation.
[**True Rich Color Bright Soft**]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors. Compared with [**True Rich Color Bright Vivid**], it produces a more relaxed impression.
[**True Rich Color Vivid**]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces colors with higher saturation than [**True Rich Color Standard**].
[**True Rich Color Standard**]	It has a wide color gamut, while producing natural-looking colors.
[**True Rich Color Soft**]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces an impression that is more relaxed than [**True Rich Color Standard**].
[**True Rich Color Deep Vivid**]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors with high saturation.
[**True Rich Color Deep Soft**]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors. Compared with [**True Rich Color Deep Vivid**], it produces a more relaxed impression.
[**True Rich Color**] / [**True Rich Color 2**] / [**True Rich Color 3**]*1	Despite its high-saturation output, it has a wide color gamut, more naturally producing colors such as gray and peach. [**True Rich Color 2**] is enabled only for [**CMYK**] images. [**True Rich Color 3**] is enabled for both [**CMYK**] and [**RGB**] images.
[**Pre-Press General**]	Applies the standard settings used for printing in general printing environments.
[**Pre-Press U.S.**]	Applies the standard settings used for printing in general printing environments in the United States.
[**Pre-Press EURO**]	Applies the standard settings used for printing in general printing environments in Europe.
[**Japan Color**]	Applies the standard settings used for printing in general printing environments in Japan.
[**MAX Impact**]	Produces vibrant images suitable for signs.
[**Sign & Display**]	Does not use the profile embedded in the image data (the profile specified by the image data). You can obtain good results by selecting this setting when you want to print dark colors over the entirety of signs.
[**MAX Density U.S.**]	Color conversion just for the illustration is disabled and output is performed as defined in the data. You can obtain good results by selecting this setting when you make the color density a priority.
[**MAX Density Japan**]	Color conversion just for the illustration is disabled and output is performed as defined in the data. This setting is almost the same as [**MAX Density U.S.**], but output is performed while preserving the primary colors.
[**Density Control Only**]	Color conversion is disabled and output is performed as defined in the data. The amount of ink is limited, so the ink does not overflow.
[**Custom**]	You can select the input profile and the matching method (color conversion) settings individually.
[**Custom High-Performance**]	You can select the input profile and the matching method (color conversion) settings individually. This assumes high performance.
[**Full Page Conversion Mode**]	Applies the same matching method for both raster and vector objects.

*1 [**True Rich Color 3**] with the broader color gamut is recommended. Select the same color setting when you set [**True Rich Color**] or [**True Rich Color 2**] before updating VersaWorks and want to output the same color.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click  for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. Click  .

3. **Select the color setting from [Settings] under [Color Management].**
   Depending on the printer you are using, some items may not be displayed.

4. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click  .

Adjusting the Color Saturation, Contrast, and Brightness of the Entire Image

Adjust the saturation of each ink, contrast, and brightness of the entire image.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. **Click**  .

3. **Under [Level Adjustment], use the slider bars to adjust the following levels.**

   MEMO

   Adjusting the slider bars under [**Level Adjustment**] has the same effect as increasing or decreasing by 10 percent the [**OUT**] value (when [**IN**] is 50 percent) when adjusting [**Tone Curves**] after clicking [**Edit Tone Curves**].

C (Cyan) / M (Magenta) / Y (Yellow) / K (Black)*1	Move the bar to the + (right) direction to darken and to the - (left) direction to lighten the color. Clear the [**Set individual level**] check box to adjust [**All Colors**] together.
[**Contrast**]	Move the bar to the + (right) direction to increase and to the - (left) direction to decrease the contrast.
[**Brightness**]	Move the bar to the + (right) direction to increase and to the - (left) direction to decrease the brightness.
[**Reset ALL**]	Click this button to reset all the level adjustment parameters to their default values (0). You can check the adjusted image in the layout area preview.

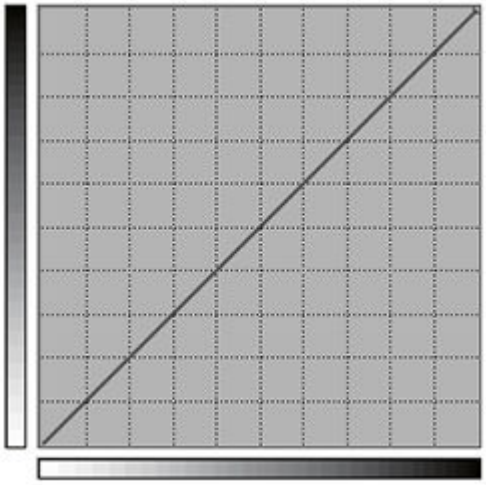
   *1 The colors displayed will vary depending on the model used.

4. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

Adjusting the Tone Curve

Use the tone curve to fine-tune the tone and color of the image. The tone curve consists of a horizontal axis (input value, before adjustment) and a vertical axis (output value, after adjustment).

The horizontal axis indicates the original brightness of the image. The vertical axis expresses the brightness after adjustment. The left edge of the horizontal axis indicates white (the brightest part). The right edge of this axis indicates black (the darkest part). The top edge of the vertical axis indicates black (the darkest part). The bottom edge of this axis indicates white (the brightest part).



Generally, you only need to make minor adjustments to the tone curve when adjusting the tone and colors of an image. Note that adjustments to the image tone and color by way of the tone curve work in addition to the adjustments made with [**Level Adjustment**] and enable more subtle adjustments.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. **Click** .

3. **Click [Edit Tone Curves].**
   The [**Tone Curves**] window appears.

4. **Under [Channel], select the color whose tone will be fine-tuned.**
   When [**Apply to All Colors**] is selected, all colors can be adjusted at the same time.

5. **Edit the tone curve.**
   (1) **Click a certain point on the tone curve (the black line).**
   A black dot (a control point) appears at the point you clicked. You can add multiple control points.
   (2) **Use one of the following methods to adjust the shape of the tone curve by moving the control point:**
   - **Drag the control point:**

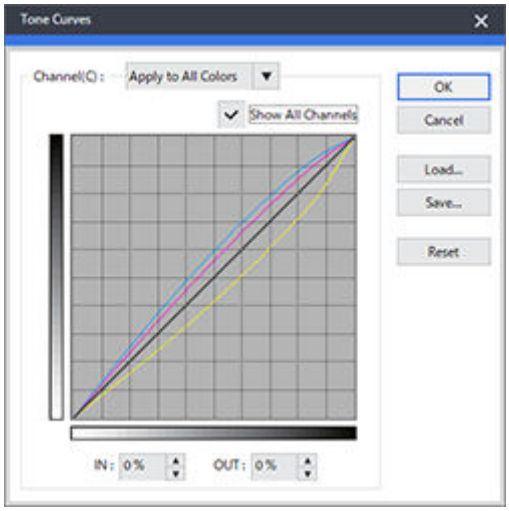
Point to the control point, and then drag it when the pointer's shape changes to .

- **Click the control point, and then enter the value in [IN] or [OUT]:**

  The adjusted result is applied immediately to the layout area preview display.

MEMO

- If you have already adjusted the levels with [**Level Adjustment**], selecting the [**Show All Channels**] check box displays under [**Tone Curves**] the curves of the colors that have undergone [**Level Adjustment**].



- When there are multiple control points, control points other than the one being dragged are fixed in place. This makes it possible to select and adjust just a specific tone area.
- To initialize the tone curve, click [**Reset**].

6. **Click [OK] to close the [Tone Curves] window.**

7. **Click [OK].**

- Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
- When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
  a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
  b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

Applying the Tone Curve Adjustment to Other Jobs

Save the tone curve settings as a Roland curve file (.rcv) and apply the same settings to another job. The job settings and queue folder settings can also be saved.

Procedure

1. **Adjust the tone curve according to the information given in** **Adjusting the Tone Curve(P. 128)**
2. **In the Tone Curves window, click [Save...].**
   Enter a name, and then click [**Save...**]. The tone curve (.rcv) is saved.
3. **Click [OK].**
   The [**Tone Curves**] window closes.
4. **Click [OK].**
5. **If multiple printers are connected to the computer, select the printer that you want to apply the saved tone curve to.**
6. **Perform the operation shown below according to where the tone curve is being applied.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.
7. **Click**  **.**
8. **Click [Level Adjustment]>[Edit Tone Curves].**
9. **Click [Load...].**
10. **Select the Roland curve file that was saved in Step 2 and click [Open].**
11. **Click [OK] to close the [Tone Curves] window.**
12. **Click [OK].**
    - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
    - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
      a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
      b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

    The same settings of the tone curve adjusted in Step 1 are applied to the job.

Customizing the Color Settings

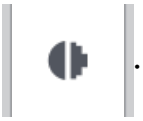
VersaWorks offers options to configure input/output profiles and matching methods with [**Properties**] and [**Specify Profile and Ignore Default**] to print as accurate a reproduction of the colors in the source data as possible.

- Input profiles: Also known as simulation profiles, these are ICC profiles that determine the colors output by the printer.
- Output Profile: Also known as printer profiles, these are ICC profiles that can be switched for different printers or media to enable more accurate color reproduction.
- Matching method: [**Perceptual**], [**Colorimetric**], [**Saturation**], [**Absolute**], and others are available. These methods determine how to adjust the colors or the overall color gamut when there are colors that cannot be reproduced with the color gamut of the printer.

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder to be used.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **Select [Custom] from the [Settings] list under [Color Settings].**

4. **Select the input profile and the matching method.**

   You can change the settings such as the input profile even when a pre-defined setting such as [Prepress U.S.] is selected. In this case, the setting name becomes [Custom].

   (1) **Click [Advanced].**

   The [**Advanced**] window appears.

   (2) **Select the input profile to use from the [Simulation Target Profiles] list.**

[RGB]	
[AdobeRGB1998.icc]	Produces most of the RGB color gamut (range.) This setting is suitable for printing images with a wide range of colors.
[Roland_DG_SignRGB_v2.icc/ Roland_SignRGB.icc]	Produces vibrant images suitable for signs.
[Roland_DG_WideGamut_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut and high saturation, and produces colors such as gray and peach more naturally.
[sRGB Color Space Profile.icm]	Produces a color space used for general computer monitors. Compared to AdobeRGB1998, sRGB has a narrow color gamut and produces muted colors.
[TrueRichColor_BS_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors. Compared with TrueRichColor_BV_RGB, it produces a somewhat more relaxed impression.
[TrueRichColor_BV_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors with high saturation.
[TrueRichColor_DS_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors. Compared with TrueRichColor_DV_RGB, it produces a somewhat more relaxed impression.
[TrueRichColor_DV_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors with high saturation.
[TrueRichColor_Std_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, while producing natural-looking colors.

[RGB]	
[TrueRichColor_V_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces colors with higher saturation than TrueRichColor_Std_RGB.

[CMYK]	
[DIC_Standard_Color_SFC_1_0_2.icm]	Applies the DIC standard color, which produces relatively sharp colors.
[EuroscaleCoated.icc/EuroscaleUncoated.icc]	Applies the standard color used for offset printing in Europe.
[JapanColor2011Coated.icc/JapanColor97.icm]	Applies the standard color used for offset printing in Japan, which produces overall deep colors.
[JapanStandard.icc]	Applies the standard color (based on JapanColor) used for offset printing in Japan, which produces slightly pale colors.
[RolandWideGamut2_CMYK.icc] / [RolandWideGamut_CMYK.icc]*1	It has a wide color gamut and high saturation, and produces colors such as gray and peach more naturally.
[Roland_DG_Deep_CMYK_1.0.icc]	Produces overall deep-colored images suitable for signs.
[Roland_SignCMYK.icc]	Produces vibrant images suitable for signs.
[TOYO Offset Coat 1.1.icm]	Applies the Toyo Ink standard color, which produces relatively pale colors.
[TrueRichColor_BS_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors. Compared with TrueRichColor_BV_CMYK, it produces a somewhat more relaxed impression.
[TrueRichColor_BV_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors with high saturation.
[TrueRichColor_DS_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors. Compared with TrueRichColor_DV_CMYK, it produces a somewhat more relaxed impression.
[TrueRichColor_DV_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors with high saturation.
[TrueRichColor_Std_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, while producing natural-looking colors.
[TrueRichColor_V_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces colors with higher saturation than TrueRichColor_Std_CMYK.
[USWebCoatedSWOP.icc] / [USWebUncoated.icc]	Applies the standard color used for offset printing in the United States.

*1 If they both appear, select [**RolandWideGamut2_CMYK.icc**], which has a broader color gamut. However to set [**RolandWideGamut_CMYK.icc**] and output using the same colors before updating VersaWorks, select [**RolandWideGamut_CMYK.icc**].

(3) **Select the color conversion method (the rendering application) from [Matching Method].**

[**Image**] is used for raster data such as images. [**Vector**] is used for vector data such as vector drawings.

(4) **To reduce speckling and preserve primary colors, select the [Preserve Primary Color] check box.**

This prevents speckling in the genuine CMYK colors due to the color setting.

(5) **To use the profile embedded in the image data for color conversions (if such a profile is available), select the [Use Embedded ICC Profile] check box.**

(6) **Click [OK] to close the [Advanced] window.**

5. **Click [OK].**

Characteristics of Each Matching Method

The characteristics of each matching method are as follows.

- [**Perceptual**]

Converts colors while maintaining tonal balance. The color values are changed, but their values relative to each other remain the same. Use this option if you want to emphasize the color balance/naturalness of a photographic image or something similar. This is a basic setting.

- [**Colorimetric**]

  Converts colors with emphasis on brightness. A color outside of the printer's color gamut is converted to a close color within the printer's color gamut. Use this option in situations where the color accuracy is emphasized while consideration is given for the white of the paper. In the printing industries in Europe and America, there are cases where this is the standard setting.

- [**Saturation**]

  Converts colors with emphasis on color vibrancy. A color outside of the printer's color gamut is converted to a color with the same saturation within the printer's color gamut. Use this option in situations where color vibrancy is required more than color accuracy, such as with charts and graphs.

- [**Absolute**]

  Converts colors with emphasis on brightness. A color outside of the printer's color gamut is converted to a close color within the printer's color gamut. Use this option in situations where the color accuracy is emphasized while consideration is given for the white of the paper.

  In the printing industries in Europe and America, there are cases where this is the standard setting.

- [**Calibration and Ink Limit**]

  Color conversion is disabled and printing is performed as defined in the data. The total ink is limited by the ink limit settings in the media. Depending on the item selected under [**Color Settings**], this may not be displayed.

  P. 125 Selecting the Color Setting from the List

- [**Calibration**]

  Color conversion is disabled and printing is performed as defined in the data. There is no ink limit, so the surface of the media may be oversaturated. Depending on the item selected under [**Color Settings**], this may not be displayed.

  P. 125 Selecting the Color Setting from the List

Matching Different Printer Output Colors

It is possible to match the output colors of printers that are different models. It is also possible when the model is the same but the ink type is different. To match the colors on different machines with the same model and same ink type, perform Obtaining a Stable Output Color(P. 136).

The flow of this operation is as follows.

1. **Creating a simulation profile**

   Create a test chart using the profile creation software, and output it from the printer to use as the color match source. Then measure the test chart and create the simulation profile.

2. **Creating and installing the output ICC profile**

   a. Use VW and create the media at the printer where color matching will be performed. For details, refer to "Step 1: Create New Media" in Registering New Media(P. 324).

   b. Create a test chart using the profile creation software, and output it from the printer where color matching will be performed. Then measure the test chart and create the output ICC profile.

   c. Configure the settings for the output ICC profile that was created on the media which was created in Step 1. For details, refer to "Step 4: Register a Profile" in Registering New Media(P. 324).

3. **Installing a simulation profile**

   Install the simulation profile that was created in Step 1 in VW. Refer to Adding Simulation Target Profiles(P. 134) for details.

4. **Profile application and printing**

   Configures the profile settings on the printer where color matching will be performed, and perform printing. Refer to Selecting the Printer Profiles(P. 135) for details.

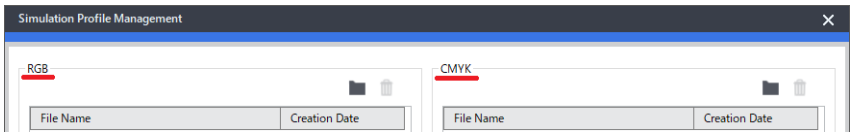
For details of the operation, contact your authorized dealer.

Adding Simulation Target Profiles

Procedure

1. **Click [Menu bar]>[Edit]>[Simulation Profile Management].**

2. **Click under [RGB] or [CMYK] according to the profile being loaded.**



   The file selection window appears.

3. **Select the profile to load, and click [Open].**

Selecting the Printer Profiles

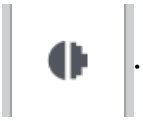
Change the printer profiles.

Printer profiles are profiles that are used when outputting jobs to the printer. Normally, the optimal profile is selected to match the media selected with [**Media Type**] under [**Quality Settings**], so there is no need to change the profile.

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder to be used.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **Select the [Specify Profile and Ignore Default] check box.**

4. **Select the profile to use.**

5. **Click [OK] to close the [Queue Properties] window.**

MEMO

These settings can also be customized per job using the [**Job Settings**] window. The estimated printing time of the job for each [**Print Quality**] mode is displayed in the [**Job Settings**] window.

Obtaining a Stable Output Color

Adjust for variation in the output colors resulting from changes over time with the same model or from individual differences with different machines of the same model.

The output colors will vary slightly even on the same printer if the data is output at different times. In addition, even with the same settings on the same models, the output colors will vary slightly from one printer to another. The causes of such issues are changes to printers over time; slight individual differences in items such as the printers, the ink, and the media; and temperature or humidity changes in the operating environment.

By determining the reference colors and matching the output colors to the reference colors, you can obtain stable output colors by reducing color variations caused by factors such as changes over time and individual differences.

However the following conditions must be met.

- The same measurement instrument is used at all times.
- The measurement instrument is calibrated appropriately.
- The print settings such as the media, resolution, printing quality, and color settings must be the same for the printer that output the reference colors (hereinafter referred to as the "reference printer") and the color match target printer (hereinafter referred to as the "target printer").
- The "reference printer" and the "target printer" are the same printer or are the same model of printer and the ink types are the same.

MEMO

Examples of utilizing this function

- When you want to unify the output colors from multiple printers in order to produce a large-volume order in a short time
- When you want to unify the output color for different production times such as regular small-lot production, or once yearly production

Step 1: Saving the [Reference Printer Data]

Define the reference colors, print a color chart, and then use a measurement instrument to save the reference colors as the [**Reference Printer Data**].

Procedure

1. **Connect the measurement instrument to the computer, and then set up the measurement instrument.**
   P. 37 Setting the Measurement Instrument to Use
2. **Click [Edit]>[Printer Color Match Settings] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Printer Color Match Settings**] window appears.
3. **Click the [Print Chart] tab.**
4. **Select [Reference Printer Data] for [Printer Data Type].**
5. **Click [Printing Condition Settings].**
   Configure settings as necessary.
6. **Click [OK].**
   The [**Printing Condition Settings**] window closes.

7. **Click [Print].**

   The [**Print Chart for Printer Color Matching**] window appears. Specify where to add the job (enter A to E).

8. **Click [OK].**

   When the message "Job has been sent successfully. appears," click [**OK**]. The color chart is printed.

9. **Click the [Measure Chart] tab.**

10. **Prepare to calibrate the measurement instrument, then click [Calibrate].**

    The calibration of the measurement instrument starts.

11. **Click [Measure].**

    Use a measurement instrument to measure the color chart.

12. **When the measurement is finished, click [Register].**

    The [**Register Reference Printer Data**] window appears.

13. **Enter the desired name in [Register Reference Printer Data].**

    The [**Register Reference Printer Data**] window closes.

    If you want to record the [**Media Name for Chart Printing**], enter it.

14. **Click [OK].**

15. **Click [OK] in the [Printer Color Match Settings] window.**

    The [**Printer Color Match Settings**] window closes.

    This completes the procedure for saving the reference color data as the [**Reference Printer Data**]. Saved [**Reference Printer Data**] is listed on the [**Reference Printer Data**] tab in the [**Printer Color Match Settings**] window.

Step 2: Saving the [**Target Printer Data**]

Step 2: Saving the [Target Printer Data]

On the printer that you want to match colors with, create a color chart with the same settings as the reference color data, and then use a measurement instrument to save the target colors as the [**Target Printer Data**].

Procedure

1. **Connect the measurement instrument to the computer, and then set up the measurement instrument.**
P. 37 Setting the Measurement Instrument to Use
2. **Click [Edit]>[Printer Color Match Settings] on the menu bar.**
The [**Printer Color Match Settings**] window appears.
3. **Click the [Print Chart] tab.**
4. **Select [Target Printer Data] for [Printer Data Type].**
5. **Click [Printing Condition Settings].**
Configure the same setting as [**Reference Printer Data**].
6. **Click [OK].**
The [**Printing Condition Settings**] window closes.
7. **Click [Print].**
The [**Print Chart for Printer Color Matching**] window appears.
8. **Specify the location to add the job (Queue A to E), and click [OK].**
When the message "Job has been sent successfully. appears," click [**OK**]. The color chart is printed.
9. **Click the [Measure Chart] tab.**
10. **Prepare to calibrate the measurement instrument, then click [Calibrate].**
The calibration of the measurement instrument starts.
11. **Click [Measure].**
Use a measurement instrument to measure the color chart.
12. **When the measurement is finished, click [Register].**
The [**Register Target Printer Data**] window appears.
13. **Enter the desired name in [Target Printer Data Name].**
The [**Register Target Printer Data**] window closes.
If you want to record the [**Media Name for Chart Printing**], enter it.
14. **Click [OK].**
15. **Click [OK] in the [Printer Color Match Settings] window.**
The [**Printer Color Match Settings**] window closes.
This completes the procedure for saving the reference color data as the [**Target Printer Data**]. Saved [**Target Printer Data**] is listed on the [**Target Printer Data**] tab in the [**Printer Color Match Settings**] window.

Step 3: Registering the [**Reference Printer Data**]

Step 3: Registering the [Reference Printer Data]

Register the [**Reference Printer Data**] so that it can be used as data for color matching.

If the computer being used is the one on which the [**Reference Printer Data**] was created, this operation is unnecessary. Proceed to Step 4: Adjusting the Output Colors and Performing Printing(P. 141).

Procedure

1. **Check that [Reference Printer Data] is saved on the computer that you are now using (or a computer on the same LAN network).**

   If there is no [**Reference Printer Data**], export (Exporting the [Reference Printer Data](P. 142)) the [**Reference Printer Data**] that has been created on another computer and save this data on the computer being used (or on a computer on the same LAN).

2. **Click [Edit]>[Printer Color Match Settings] on the menu bar.**

   The [**Printer Color Match Settings**] window appears.

3. **Click the [Reference Printer Data] tab.**

4. **Click** .

5. **Select the desired [Reference Printer Data], and then click [Open].**

   The reference printer data is displayed in the [**Reference Printer Data List**].

   To check the details of the reference printer data, select the desired data, and then click [**Review Details**]. You can check the detailed settings on the [**Advanced**] window that appears.

6. **If there are multiple instances of reference printer data, repeat Steps 4 and 5.**

7. **Click [OK] in the [Printer Color Match Settings] window.**

   This completes the procedure for registering the [**Reference Printer Data**].

Step 4: Adjusting the Output Colors and Performing Printing

Step 4: Adjusting the Output Colors and Performing Printing

Use [**Reference Printer Data**] and [**Target Printer Data**] to perform color matching and output data.

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder to be used.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **Select the [Printer Color Match Settings]>[Perform Printer Color Matching] check box.**

   If the [**Reference Printer Data**] and [**Target Printer Data**] are not registered, the [**Printer Color Match Settings**] setting area will be unusable and displayed in gray.

4. **Click [Reference Printer Data]>[Color Settings].**

   The [**Reference Printer Data Settings**] window appears.

5. **Select the desired data from the [Reference Printer Data List], and then click [OK].**

   To check the details of the reference printer data, select the data to check, and then click [**Review Details**].

6. **Click [Target Printer Data]>[Color Settings].**

   The [**Target Printer Data Settings**] window appears.

7. **Select the desired data from the [Target Printer Data List], and then click [OK].**

   To check the details of the target printer data, select the data to check, and then click [**Review Details**].

8. **Click [OK] to close the [Queue Properties] window.**

9. **Click** **.**

Exporting the [Reference Printer Data]

By exporting the created [**Reference Printer Data**], it is possible to use [**Reference Printer Data**] on a different computer.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Printer Color Match Settings] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Printer Color Match Settings**] window appears.
2. **Click the [Reference Printer Data] tab.**
3. **Select the desired [Reference Printer Data], and then click**  **.**
4. **Select the desired folder, and then click [Save...].**

Checking the Detailed Settings of the Reference/Target Printer Data

You can check the detailed [**Reference Printer Data**] and [**Target Printer Data**] settings (the profile settings and the matching method).

To match colors, the settings must be the same for both of these pieces of data.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Printer Color Match Settings] on the menu bar.**

   The [**Printer Color Match Settings**] window appears.

2. **Click the [Reference Printer Data] or [Target Printer Data] tab.**

3. **Select the printer data to check, then click [Review Details].**

   The [**Details**] window appears. The details of [**Color Management**] and [**Color Adjustment**] can be checked.

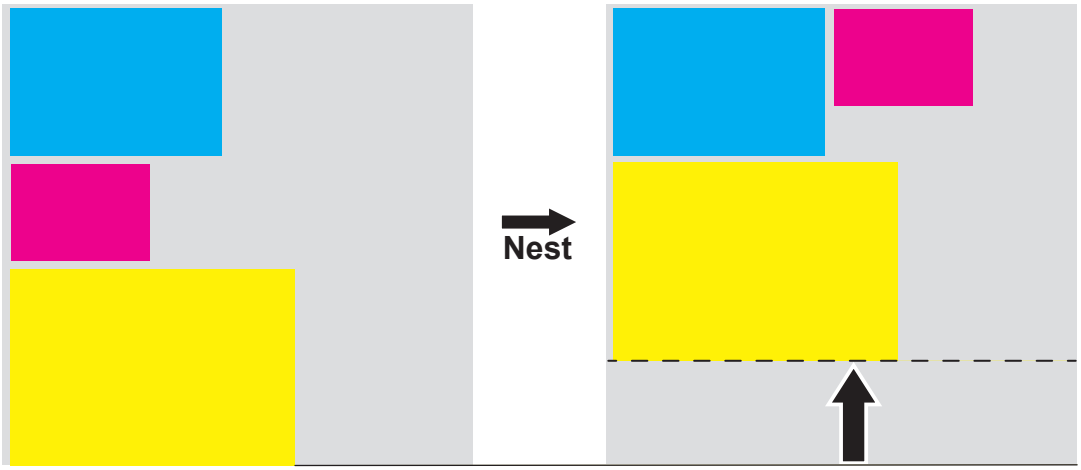
Efficient Ways to Output Data

Reducing Wasted Time to Improve Efficiency

Reducing the Amount of Media Used 146
Creating a Nested Job from the Selected Jobs 146
Automatically Creating a Nested Job 147
Automating Processing by the RIP and Printing 149
Processing a Job by the RIP or Printing a Job Automatically 149
Setting Processing after Printing Is Completed 150
Printing while Processing by the RIP 151
Outputting Multiple Jobs at Once 152
Changing the Order in Which Jobs Are Output when Printing 153
Adding a Name to a Queue Folder 154

Reducing the Amount of Media Used

Optimize media usage by arranging multiple jobs to minimize the total media usage.



The process of arranging multiple jobs to minimize the total media usage is called nesting. Also, a group of jobs nested together is called a nested job.

By effectively nesting jobs, you can minimize the amount of media that is used.

Creating a Nested Job from the Selected Jobs

Create nested jobs by selecting multiple jobs from the job list.

MEMO

Among all the selected jobs, the settings of the first job that was added to the job list are applied to the print settings of the nested job.

Procedure

1. **Perform one of the following operations to select multiple jobs from the job list:**
   - While holding down the shift key, click the first job, and then click the last job.
   - While holding down the ctrl key, click the jobs one by one.
   - Drag the mouse pointer over multiple jobs.

2. **Click**  **or right-click and then click [Nest].**

   A nested job is created from the selected jobs. The name of the nested job will be [**Nest Job date-number**]. Serial numbers (-1, -2...) are assigned according to the creation order.
   - First nested job: [**Nest Job 10/10-1**]
   - Second nested job: [**Nest Job 10/10-2**]

Automatically Creating a Nested Job

It is possible to set the conditions and automatically create nested jobs.

The examples used in this explanation are cases in which there is more than one creator of print data. Print data is regularly loaded into VersaWorks via the network. Set processing conditions for loaded print data and create nested jobs. You can also automate processing by the RIP or even printing, if necessary.

The print data processing conditions are as follows.

- **[By Time]**

  When the specified time is reached, a nested job is created.
- **[By Paper Length]**

  A nested job is created to the specified length.
- **[By Number of Jobs]**

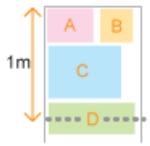
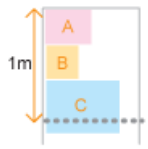
  A nested job is created when the specified number is reached.

If **[Action for Incoming Jobs]** has been used to set **[RIP Only]** or **[RIP and Print]**, processing by the RIP or printing will be performed when the nested jobs are completed.

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder to enter.**

   The **[Queue Properties]** window appears.
2. **Configure the printing settings such as the media and printing quality.**
3. **Click** .
4. **Under [Action for Incoming Jobs], turn on the conditions to specify, then enter the values.**

[By Time]	When the specified time is reached, a nested job is created. If you set **[Set Time Interval]**, nested jobs are created according to the set interval of time.
[By Paper Length]	A nested job is created to the specified length. You also will not be able to check the state of nesting in the layout window until the nested job is finished. For example, if you set **[By Paper Length]** to 1000.00 mm, a nested job for 1 m is created. At this point, the state of nesting is displayed in the layout window.  However, until the nested job is created, jobs are listed in the order that they are added to the job list even if 1 m is reached before nesting, as shown on the left side of the diagram shown below. 
[By Number of Jobs]	A nested job is created when the number of jobs registered in the queue folder reaches the specified value.

If you select multiple conditions, a nested job is created when at least one of the conditions is met.

5. **Click [OK] to close the [Queue Properties] window.**

6. **Add the job to the job list.**

MEMO

- If you change the settings in the [**Queue Properties**] window when there are jobs that are waiting to be nested, those jobs will no longer be nested automatically.
- You can rearrange the jobs in nested jobs in the layout area of the [**Job Settings**] window.
- You can set the [**Action**] in [**Action for Incoming Jobs**] to [**RIP and Print**] to automate the entire process from the creation of nested jobs to printing.
- Click  while a nested job is selected to undo the nesting.

The [**Status**] field in the job list shows ⏸ for jobs that are waiting to be nested. Nested jobs are automatically created when the specified condition is met.

Automating Processing by the RIP and Printing

This section explains how to configure the settings so that jobs added to the job list are automatically processed by the RIP, printed, or processed after printing.

Processing a Job by the RIP or Printing a Job Automatically

Sets the operation when print data is added to the job list.

[**Do Nothing**] is the default setting, but the amount of time required can be shortened by setting [**RIP Only**] or [**RIP and Print**].

However, [**RIP and Print**] should be used with caution, as print data is printed using the input property settings.

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder to be used.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Click .**

3. **From [Action] under [Action for Incoming Jobs], select one of the following.**

[RIP Only]	Processing by the RIP is automatically performed when a job is added to the job list.
[RIP and Print]	Both processing by the RIP and printing are automatically performed when a job is added to the job list. With this setting, you cannot specify the print count.

MEMO

Select the [**Auto Rotate to Save Media**] check box to reduce the amount of wasted media by automatically placing portrait images horizontally. This function operates independently from what is selected for [**Action**]. If you select this check box, jobs will be rotated and arranged on the media automatically even if [**Do Nothing**] is selected for [**Action**].

4. **Set other items as necessary.**

5. **Click [OK] to close the [Queue Properties] window.**

   When you add print data to the job list, the set process is performed automatically.

Setting Processing after Printing Is Completed

This section explains how to process a job after printing is completed.

- **[Save Job]**

  Jobs will be saved after printing finishes.
- **[Delete RIP Data]**

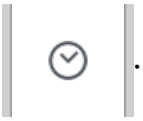
  All intermediate data such as the data processed by the RIP will be deleted, but the job will remain in the job list.
- **[Delete Job]**

  Jobs will be deleted completely and will be deleted from the job list.

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder to be used.**

   The **[Queue Properties]** window appears.

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **Select the processing method from [Action After Printing].**

[Save Job][*1]	The data processed by the RIP is kept, so you can print the job again without having to process it by the RIP. However, as more jobs are added to the job list, finding jobs involves more effort.
[Delete RIP Data]	To print the job again, you will have to process it by the RIP again. VersaWorks will have less data capacity than if **[Save Job]** is used, but the number of jobs in the job list will increase.
[Delete Job]	When the output is finished, the job is deleted and the queue folder is emptied. To print the job again, the print data must be saved separately.

*1 Default value

4. **Click [OK] to close the [Queue Properties] window.**

> **MEMO**
>
> If you want to change the settings so that they are different for different jobs, you can add them to the job list and then change them in the **[Job Settings]** window.

Printing while Processing by the RIP

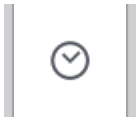
Use the following procedure to configure the settings so that jobs are printed while they are processed by the RIP. The total processing time will be smaller than the sum of the time it takes to process by the RIP and print separately.

MEMO

Under certain conditions, [**RIP while Printing**] is disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **Select the [RIP while Printing] check box.**

   MEMO

   You can enable this setting by selecting the [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**]>[**General**]>[**Print Options**]>[**Configure Advanced Print Settings**] check box, but the operation is disabled and printing is performed after processing by the RIP finishes.

4. **Click [OK] .**

5. **Click** **.**

   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed at the same time.

Outputting Multiple Jobs at Once

This section explains how to group multiple jobs and thereby output them with a single operation.

- Example 1

  Group together print data A, print data B, and print data C and print three copies. Because the printed materials will be in the sequence A-B-C, A-B-C, and A-B-C, you can produce 3 copies of the print object.

- Example 2

  By grouping white print data, CMYK print data, and gloss print data and performing pullback printing with the white and CMYK print data, you can obtain layered printing in the order of white > CMYK > gloss. In this case, for white print data and CMYK print data, select the check box for [**Cut Controls**]>[**Cutting Options**]>[**Return to Origin After Print**], and then perform pullback printing.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Unlike nested jobs, the layout of the print data cannot be changed for grouped jobs. Therefore, printing such as that described under Reducing the Amount of Media Used(P. 146) is not possible, even if the print data is grouped.

Procedure

1. **Configure settings individually for each job as necessary.**

2. **Select multiple jobs from the job list.**

   To select multiple jobs, perform one of the following operations:

   - While holding down the ctrl key, click the jobs one by one.
   - While holding down the shift key, click the first job to select, and then click the last job to select.

   MEMO

   The job groups are grouped in the order they are selected. To specify the printing order, select the jobs in the printing order.

3. **Perform one of the following operations to group the jobs.**

   - Right-click in the window, and then click [**Multiple Job Grouping**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Grouping**] on the menu bar.

4. **Select and print the job group.**

Changing the Order in Which Jobs Are Output when Printing

When outputting multiple jobs, change the order of the jobs in the job list, thereby changing the order in which the jobs are printed. This makes it possible to print jobs with a higher urgency first and to output jobs with the printing order in mind when repeatedly printing multiple jobs.

You cannot include in a grouped job other jobs from outside the group.

Change the order of jobs in the same queue folder. You cannot:

- Move jobs to different job lists.
- Move jobs to different printers.

Procedure

1. **Drag jobs in the job list to move them up and down in the order.**

2. **To print in the job list order, select all the jobs in the list and click .**

   Printing is performed from the job at the top of the job list.

Adding a Name to a Queue Folder

Adding a name to a queue folder will make it easier to organize jobs. The queue folder name is retained even after exiting VersaWorks. However when the registered machine is deleted, the queue folder names are also deleted.

Some usage examples are listed below.

- Separating according to client (example: Queue A > Roland DG, Queue B > DGSHAPE)
- Separating according to used media name (example: Queue A > transparent media, Queue B > PVC media)
- Separating according to work day (example: Queue A > 10/13, Queue B > 10/14)

Procedure

1. **Align the mouse pointer with the alphabet icon (for Queue A: A) located on the left side of the queue folder that you will name, and then click the icon that the alphabet icon changes to.**

   The [**Change Queue Name**] window appears.

2. **Enter the folder name, and then click [OK].**

   The entered name is displayed on the queue folder.

MEMO

- The size of the queue folder tabs changes to match the width of the queue folder with the longest name.
- When the tab name is long, an abbreviated display containing "..." is used.

Improving Efficiency through Reuse

Saving and Reusing Printed Jobs 156
- Saving a VW Job File 156
- Printing Using a VW Job File 158
- Saving a VW Job + Source Data File 159
- Printing Using a VW Job + Source Data File 160
- Saving a PRT Native File 161
- Printing Using a PRT Native File 162

Reusing Queue Folder Settings 163
- Step 1: Saving Printing Settings 163
- Step 2: Loading Files to Use Printing Settings with Queue Folders 164
- Overwriting Saved Printing Settings Files 165
- Deleting Printing Settings Files 166

Reusing Job Settings 167
- Using Job Printing Settings with Other Jobs 168
- Saving the Printing Settings of the Job 169
- Loading Files to Use Printing Settings with Other Jobs 170

Duplicating Jobs 171

Saving and Reusing Printed Jobs

You can export the information and RIP processed data in the printing settings of a printed job and manage it as a file in a separate folder.

The three types of files that can be saved are the following.

- **[VW Job File]**

  This file contains only the printing settings such as the job's source data information, the media width, the number of copies to print, and the profile. These printing settings can be applied to different print data. This file takes up the least space.

  When saving as a **[VW Job File]**, be sure to also save the source data. If the source data is not present, it will not be possible to load the **[VW Job File]**.

- **[VW Job + Source File]**

  This file contains the VW job file, in which the printing setting information is saved, and the source data. Saving this file makes it possible to print the same data with the same printing settings again.

  If printing was performed from the design software, it is necessary to save in **[VW Job + Source File]** format.

- **[PRT File]**

  This file contains RIP processed data. Although this file takes up the most space, it reduces the processing performed by the computer and shortens the work time when printing the data again.

It is also possible to manage using a VersaWorks job list rather than managing as a file. The characteristics of each are as shown below.

Item	Managing as a job list	Managing as a file
Management	Print data (source data) is managed in a separate folder, however the printing settings and other information are managed using a job list.	The print data (source data), printing settings, RIP data, and other information is managed together in a folder.
Reprinting	Reprinting is easy because there is a job that was processed by the RIP.	Import into VersaWorks again in order to reprint.
New print data	Scroll the job list and access the new print data that is added at the bottom.	Access to new print data is easy because the job list can be made empty.

Saving a VW Job File

Saves only the printing settings information of the job (such as the job's source data information, the media width, the number of copies to print, and the profile) as a file.

IMPORTANT

- When saving a **[VW Job File]**, be sure to also save the source data. If the source data is not present, it will not be possible to load the **[VW Job File]**.
- If printing was performed from the design software, it is necessary to save in **[VW Job + Source File]** format.
  P. 159 Saving a VW Job + Source Data File

Procedure

1. **From the job list, select the job you printed.**

2. **Click**  **.**

   The **[Save As]** window appears.

3. **Select [VW Job File] for [File type].**

4. **Enter the file name, and then click [Save...].**
   The [**VW Job File**] is saved.

Printing Using a VW Job File

Printing is performed using the saved [**VW Job File**].

MEMO

When the save location of the original data is changed after saving [**VW Job File**], the following message appears: "Original file "xxx.xxx" does not exist. Do you want to specify the folder?" In this case, click [**Yes**], and then specify the new location where the source data is saved. To cancel the loading of the file, click [**No**].

Procedure

1. **Add [VW Job File] to the job list.**

   The name of the original data is displayed in the job list. The printing conditions are automatically set to the saved details.

2. **In the job list, double-click the job.**

   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

3. **Check the settings, and then change them if necessary.**

4. **Click [OK].**

5. **Click**  **.**

   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Saving a VW Job + Source Data File

Save the VW job file (in which the printing settings information is saved) and the source data as a single file.

MEMO

- If printing was performed from the design software, save in [**VW Job + Source File**] format. If printing was performed from the design software, deleting the job also deletes the source data at the same time. Because the source data is required when reloading a VW job, save the job in the [**VW Job + Source File**] format so that you can load the source data.
- If you set the format to [**VW Job + Source File**], the file size is larger than that when saving just the [**VW Job File**]. However, this format also has the advantage of eliminating the need to save the source data separately.

Procedure

1. **From the job list, select the job you printed.**
2. **Click**  **.**

   The [**Save As**] window appears.
3. **Select [VW Job + Source File] for [File type].**
4. **Enter the file name, and then click [Save…].**

   The VW job + source data is saved as a single file.

Printing Using a VW Job + Source Data File

Printing is performed using the saved [**VW Job + Source File**].

Procedure

1. **Add [VW Job + Source File] to the job list.**

   The name of the source data is displayed in the job list. The saved details are applied to the printing conditions.

2. **If necessary, change the [Job Settings].**

3. **Click**  **.**

   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Saving a PRT Native File

Save RIP processed data as a [**PRT File**] (.prt extension).

MEMO

This makes it possible to transfer the file directly to and print from the printer without performing processing by the RIP, which reduces the processing performed by the computer and shortens the work time. However, the print settings cannot be changed when printing the job again. The [**PRT File**] file size varies depending on the print quality and output size.

Procedure

1. **From the job list, select the job you printed.**
2. **Click**  **.**

   The [**Save As**] window appears.
3. **Select [PRT File] for [File type].**
4. **Enter the file name, and then click [Save...].**

   The [**PRT File**] is saved.

Printing Using a PRT Native File

Printing is performed using the saved [**PRT File**]. In advance, set up the media with the printer that will be used for printing, then perform the following.

IMPORTANT

You cannot add PRT native files to the job list. Nor can you change their print settings. Before printing, make sure that the media (type and size) currently loaded in the printer is identical to the media used when you saved the [**PRT File**].

Procedure

1. **Click [Printer]>[Send Native File to Printer] on the menu bar.**

2. **Select the saved [PRT File] and click [Open].**

   The [**Send Native File to Printer**] window appears, and then printing starts. The [**Send Native File to Printer**] window shows the progress of the file transfer and automatically closes when the file transfer is complete.

Reusing Queue Folder Settings

There are only five queue folders (A to E), so only five sets of queue folder settings are available for daily use. However, you can use this function to retain settings for each client or type of media and reproduce the corresponding output.

Save and load the settings configured on the [Queue Properties] window as a printing settings file.

Step 1: Saving Printing Settings

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder that will be the target for the save operation.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

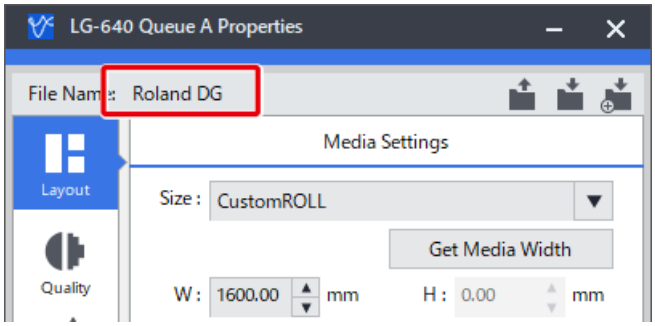
2. **Click .**

   The [**Save Printing Settings File**] window appears.

3. **Enter the desired name in [File Name].**

4. **Click [OK].**

   You are returned to the [**Queue Properties**] window. The file name that you entered in Step 3 is displayed at the top of the window.



MEMO

If the name of the printing settings file is not displayed, the printing settings of the [Queue Properties] window have not been saved to the printing settings file.

5. **Click [OK] to close the [Queue Properties] window.**

Step 2: Loading Files to Use Printing Settings with Queue Folders

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder to be used.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Click .**

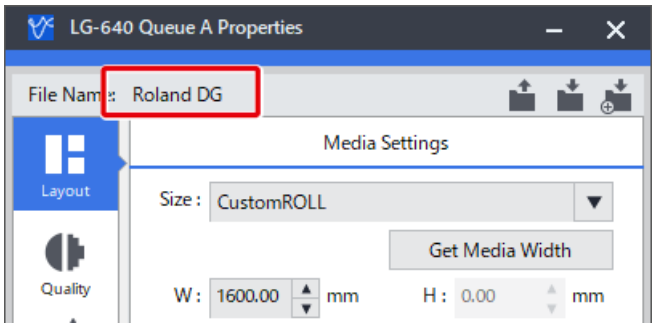
   The [**Select Printing Settings File**] window appears.

3. **Click the printing settings file to use from the list of printing settings files.**

   The information of the printing settings file is displayed on the right side of the screen.

4. **Click [OK].**

   The name of the loaded file is displayed in the [**Queue Properties**] window.



5. **Click [OK] to close the [Queue Properties] window.**

Overwriting Saved Printing Settings Files

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder to overwrite.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Change the print settings.**

3. **Click .**

   The print settings are overwritten.

   MEMO

   When the same printing settings file is used by multiple [**Queue Properties**], an update confirmation message will be displayed.

   Example: When the same printing settings file is used in the Queue A and Queue B properties

   - Click [**Yes**] to overwrite the print settings of the Queue A and Queue B properties that are using the same printing settings file.
   - Click [**No**] to overwrite only the printing settings file of the [**Queue Properties**] that will be changed. The Queue B print settings are not changed and remain as they were, however the printing settings file name disappears.

4. **Click [OK] to close the [Queue Properties] window.**

Deleting Printing Settings Files

The number of printing settings files that you can save is not limited, but you can delete any printing settings files that are no longer necessary.

MEMO

[**Default Setting**] and the printing settings file that is currently in use cannot be deleted.

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder that will be the target for the deletion operation.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Click or .**

   The [**Select Printing Settings File**] or [**Save Printing Settings File**] window appears.

3. **Click the printing settings file that you want to delete from the list of printing settings files.**

4. **Click .**

   The file is deleted.

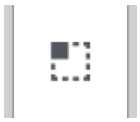
5. **Click [OK] to close the [Queue Properties] window.**

Reusing Job Settings

The print settings of a given job (job A) can be used with a different job (job B) that already exists in the job list. In this way, the same print settings can be applied to different print data.

Most print settings can be reused, but there are limitations on the following items.

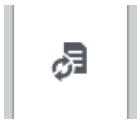
Items that cannot be used (Setting value returns to the default value.)

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="3"> 
[Layout]</td><td rowspan="3">[Print Quality]</td><td rowspan="2">[Page Range]</td><td>[from]</td></tr>
<tr><td>[to]</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">[Direction]*1</td></tr>
<tr><td> 
[Clip and Tile]</td><td colspan="3">All items</td></tr>
<tr><td>[Step & Repeat]*2</td><td colspan="3">All items</td></tr>
</table>

*1  is set regardless of the job A and job B settings.

*2 This menu is set by right-clicking the job.

Items where the job A settings are not applied and the job B settings remain (Setting value remains the same as before reuse.)

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="3"> 
[File Format]</td><td colspan="2">[EPS]</td><td>[Margin]</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">[Spot Color Settings] list</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">[Special Color Settings] list</td></tr>
<tr><td> 
[Variable Data]</td><td colspan="3">All items</td></tr>
</table>

Items that take on the setting values of the leading page of job A

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="3"> 
[Layout]</td><td rowspan="3">[Scaling]</td><td>[Scale]</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">[Position]</td><td>[X]</td></tr>
<tr><td>[Y]</td></tr>
</table>

Using Job Printing Settings with Other Jobs

Procedure

1. **From the job list, select the job (job A) whose output settings will be copied.**
2. **Perform one of the following operations to copy the job setting values.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Copy**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Copy**] on the menu bar.
3. **From the job list, select the job (job B) in which to paste the setting values.**
4. **Perform one of the following operations to paste the job setting values.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Paste**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Paste**] on the menu bar.

   The job B settings are updated with the details of job A.

Saving the Printing Settings of the Job

When the details for a job have been set, these settings can be saved. The saved settings can be applied to a different job or queue folder.

Procedure

1. **From the job list, select the job that has been configured with the printing settings to save.**
2. **Use one of the methods below to display the [Save Printing Settings File] window.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Save as Printing Settings File**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Save as Printing Settings File**] on the menu bar.
3. **Enter the desired name in [File Name].**
4. **Click [OK].**

MEMO

Follow the procedure below to check the saved file.

1. Select the saved printer, and click  for the desired queue file.
2. Click  .
   The [**Select Printing Settings File**] window appears.
3. Check the saved file.
   [**File Attributes**] and [**Job Properties**] can be checked.

Loading Files to Use Printing Settings with Other Jobs

Procedure

1. **From the job list, select the job to use.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to display the [Select Printing Settings File] window.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Printing Settings File**].
   - Click [**Copy/Paste Setting Value**]>[**Apply Printing Settings File**] on the menu bar.

3. **From the list of printing settings files, click the printing settings file that you want to load.**
   The information of the printing settings file is displayed on the right side of the screen.

4. **Click [OK].**
   The printing settings are applied to the job.

Duplicating Jobs

Duplicate the selected job to create a job with the same settings. For example, this feature allows you to create a job whose settings can be changed without changing the original job, such as when you want to change some settings of a job in the list of previously printed jobs and then print the changed job.

Procedure

1. **From the job list, select the job or job group that you want to duplicate.**

2. **Use one of the following methods to perform the duplication.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Duplicate**]>[**Duplicate Job**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Duplicate**]>[**Duplicate Job**] on the menu bar.

3. **Change the job name in the [Duplicate Job] window.**

   If it is not changed, the job will be saved as "Job name + Copy (1)." Then right-click the job to change the job name with [**Rename**].

4. **Click [OK].**
   - The duplicate job is added at the bottom of the job list.
   - If you selected a job within a job group, the duplicate job is added at the bottom of the list within the job group.

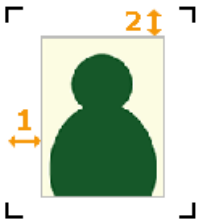
Operating Special Printing Features

Printing with Added Marks and Information

Adding Trim Marks or Margin Marks 174
Printing Job Information..... 175
Adding an Overlap Width for Tiled Printing 176

Adding Trim Marks or Margin Marks

Add trim marks, margin marks, or special cut marks around the image, then print.

Type	Details
[**Trim Marks**]	Prints trim marks added at the four corners of the job as shown in the diagram. 
[**Margin Marks**]	Leaves margins around the job and prints the margin marks at the four corners of the margin as shown in the diagram. Set the horizontal margin with [**Horizontal**] (1) and the vertical margin with [**Vertical**] (2) for the job. 
[**FOTOBA Cutline Marks**]	Adds and prints specialized cutting marks when using Fotoba International S.R.L.'s finishing cutters. To print lines in the vertical direction, select the [**Print vertical lines**] check box.

MEMO

You can set [**Crop Marks (Print&Cut Alignment)**] regardless of whether margin marks or trim marks are present. However, this cannot be set on printers that do not support the cutting function.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. **Click** .

3. **Select the mark to be added from [Type] under [Marks].**
   - [**Trim Marks**]
   - [**Margin Marks**]
   - [**FOTOBA Cutline Marks**]

4. **Click [OK].**

5. **Add the job to the job list, and then start printing.**
   The selected marks are printed around the image.

Printing Job Information

The model name and serial number of the printer that was used, as well as the job name, are printed below the printed item. The following items can also be added. The printing size can be checked in the layout area in the [**Job Settings**] window.

[**File Name**]	Print data file name
[**Layout**]	Number of copies and scale
[**Quality Settings**]	Current quality settings
[**Color Settings**]	Details of the [**Color Settings**]
[**Printer Color Match**]	Information of the color match between the reference color and the target color
[**File Format**]	Settings of the spot colors and special colors (only when the conversion is enabled)
[**Device Controls**]	Feed calibration (only when [**Use Printer Settings**] is not selected)
[**Job Management**]	Job handling after printing
[**Clip and Tile**]	Location of the tile (clipped location and tile size for a clipped image)
[**Spot Color**]	Spot color plate generation or correction
[**Date/Time**]	Date and time that the job was processed
[**Notes**]	Text entered in the input field

MEMO

You can use the preview in the layout area to check where the job properties will be printed.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. **Click** .

3. **Select the [Print Job Properties] check box under [Job Property Label].**

   The model name and serial number of the printer that was used, as well as the job name, will be printed. As necessary, turn on any additional items to be printed.

4. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

        The changes are reflected in the layout area of the top window.

5. **Perform printing.**

   The selected printing information is printed below the printed item.

Adding an Overlap Width for Tiled Printing

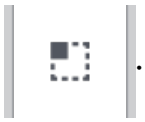
When dividing a large job for printing (tiled printing), add an overlap width to the divided part (tile).



With [**Overlap**], you can configure the overlap width, line width and color of the overlap line, and other settings.

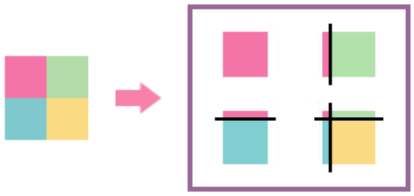
Procedure

1. **In the job list, double-click the job.**
   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

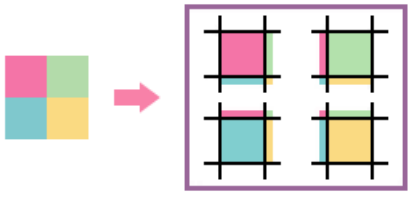
2. **Click**  **.**

3. **Follow** **Tiling an Image(P. 183)** **to divide the image into tiles.**

4. **Select how to create the overlapping from the options in the [Type] list under [Overlap].**
   - [Top-Left]
     Creates overlap widths at the top and left of tiles. Set this to decide the positions of the remaining three tiles after the top left (pink) position is decided.

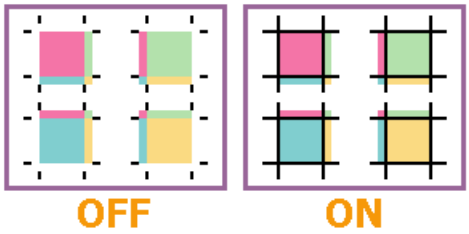
     

   - [ALL Corners]
     Creates overlap widths around each tile. Set this when the tile to use as the reference for positioning is not specified.

5. **Enter the overlap width in [Size].**

6. **To print overlap lines, select the [Print Overlap Lines] check box.**



MEMO

The line width and color of the overlap lines can be changed.

1. Enter the value in [**Stroke**] under [**Overlap**].
2. Click [**Color Settings**]. The [**Color Settings**] window appears.
3. Select [**RGB**] or [**CMYK**] from [**ColorSpace**], and then adjust the slider bars or enter the values for each color.
4. Click [**OK**].

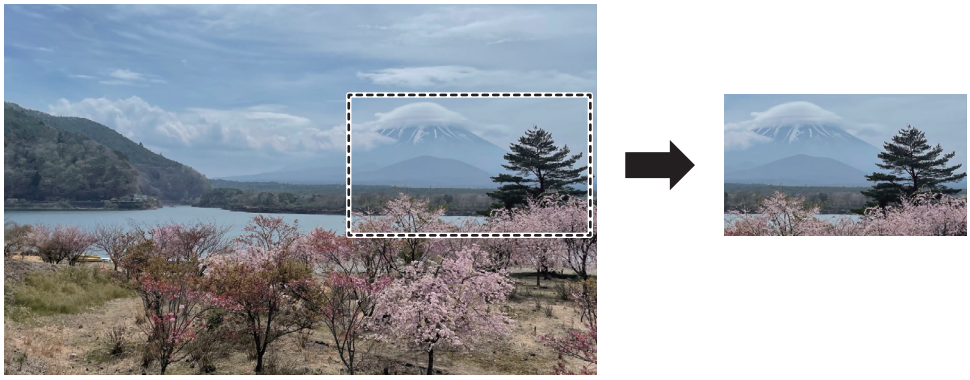
7. **Click [OK].**

Specifying the Printing Area, Print Count, and Overprinting Count When Printing

Printing the Selected Area of the Image: [**Clip Image**] 179
Maintaining the Clipped Position 181
Tiling an Image 183
Printing a Single Image Side by Side: [**Step & Repeat**] 186
Performing Overprinting: [**Overprint**] 188

Printing the Selected Area of the Image: [Clip Image]

Select and print only a part of the image. This function is useful when you want to print just a part of a job with a large printing size and check the color tone or picture quality before printing the whole job.



Procedure

1. **In the job list, double-click the job.**
   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

2. **Click**  .

3. **Select the [Clip Image] check box.**

4. **Set the part to be printed (the clip area).**
   - **Entering the values**
     a. In [**Size**], enter the width and the height of the clip area.
     b. In [**Top Left Position**], enter the location of the upper-left corner of the clip area with the origin at the upper-left corner of the image.

     MEMO
     - [**Top Left Position**] can be set within the range such that the clip area set with [**Size**] does not go beyond the edges of the original image.
     - Be sure to set [**Size**] before setting [**Top Left Position**].

   - **Dragging the mouse in the layout area**
     a. In the layout area, click  .
     b. Point to the small square (the clip point) on the clip line (the red line in the figure). The pointer changes to  (a shape with a point in the upper-right corner).
     c. Drag the clip point to set the clip area.

     MEMO
     To fine-tune the clip area, use  and  to enlarge the preview image, and then drag the clip point again.

MEMO

You can also combine both methods to configure the settings. For example, you can set the clip area roughly in the layout area, and then fine-tune the clip area by entering the values. You can also perform Maintaining the Clipped Position(P. 181).

5. Click [OK].

6. Click  .

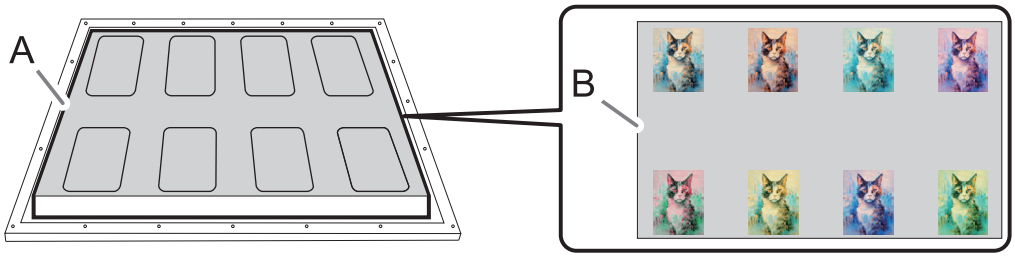
Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Maintaining the Clipped Position

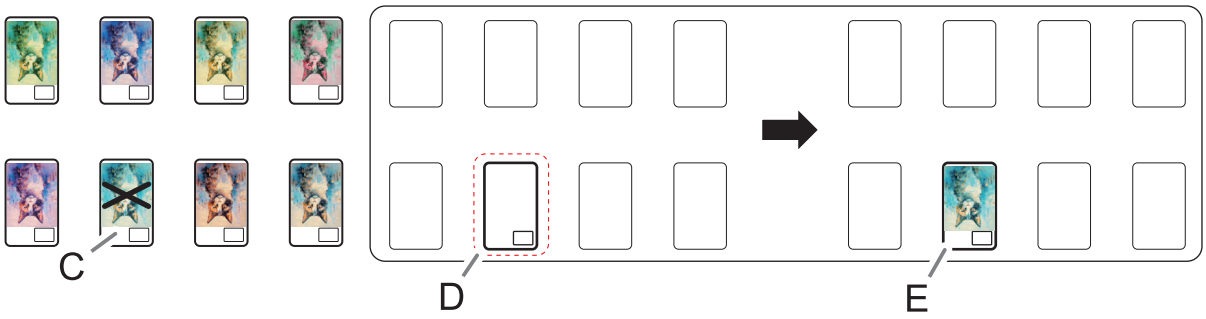
Print a clipped image while maintaining its original position. You can reprint only the necessary part of the same print data.

As an example, this explains printing to multiple objects to be printed on using a flat table model.

1. Place the jig (A) on the flat table, and position eight objects to be printed on.
2. Create print data (B) for the jig size, and perform printing.



3. Because a problem (C) occurred during printing, position an object to be printed on only in that position (D) and perform reprinting (E).



Procedure

1. **In the job list, double-click the job.**

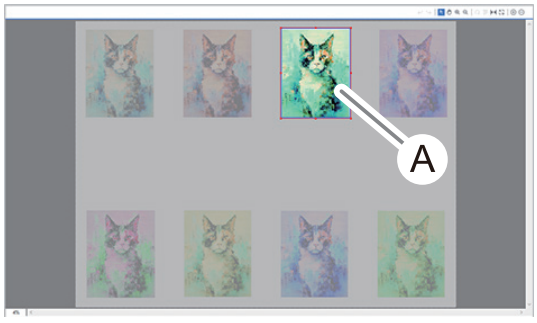
The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

2. **Click**  .

3. **Select the [Clip Image] check box.**

4. **Part for reprinting: Set the clip area (A).**

Either drag the red points in the layout area or use [**Top Left Position**] and [**Size**] under [**Clipping**] and set the clip area.

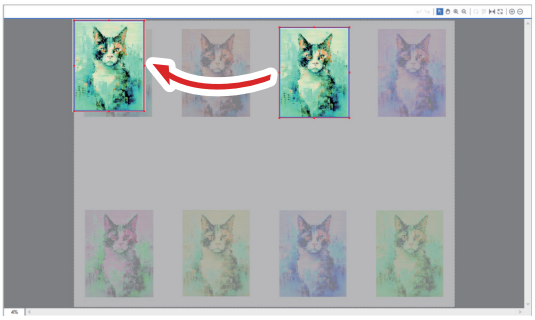


5. **Select the [Maintain Clipped Position] check box.**

You can print a clipped image maintained at its original position.

IMPORTANT

If this setting is not made, the clipped image will automatically be placed in the origin position.



MEMO

[**Maintain Clipped Position**] cannot be set in the following situations:

- Tiling has been set.
- There are multiple pages.
- Nested job
- Multiple copies are printed.

6. **Click [OK] to close the [Job Settings] window.**

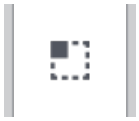
Tiling an Image

When printing an image that will not fit on the width of the roll media, or when printing divided onto multiple media (objects to be printed on) with a flat-bed printer, configure the tile position and size settings.

Procedure

1. **In the job list, double-click the job.**

   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

2. **Click**  .

   The image in the layout area is zoomed in on.

3. **In [Tiling], select one of the tiling methods shown below.**

   - **[Manual Tiling]**

     Sets the number of tiles and the tile size. This print data is tiled by a blue vertical line according to the media size. Next adjust the position so that a face is not divided.

     a. Align the pointer with the tiling line (blue line) in the layout area preview.

     The pointer changes to .

     MEMO

     When the pointer is aligned with the red square shape (clip point) on the tiling line, the pointer shape changes to . Drag to the left to clip the image and change the part that is printed.

     - When dividing the image, point to any point other than the clip point on the tiling line.

     b. Drag the tiling line and move it to the location where you want to divide the image.

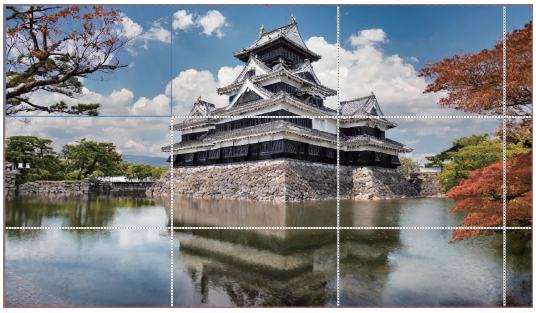
     

If you want to further divide the image horizontally, align the pointer with the red line on the right edge or left edge and drag the line.

c. To divide the image divided vertically also, align the pointer with the red line at bottom edge or top edge of the preview and drag the line.

- **[Tile Size]**

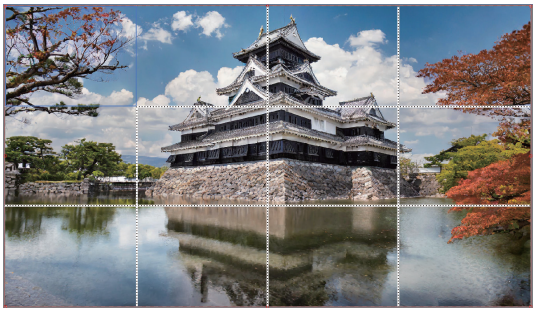
  Divides the job evenly at the specified size with the origin at the upper-left corner of the media. The tiles on the right and bottom edges may be smaller than the specified size.



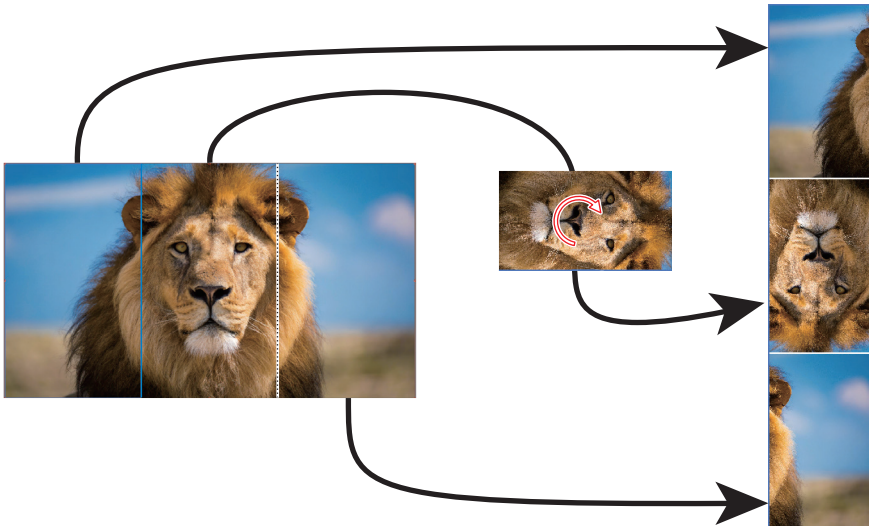
Select the tile size from the **[Size]** list. If you want to set a size other than the standard sizes, select **[CustomCUT]** or **[CustomROLL]**, and then enter the width and length.

- **[Number of Tiles]**

  Divides the job into the number of tiles specified with **[Horizontal]** and **[Vertical]**. All tiles have the same size.

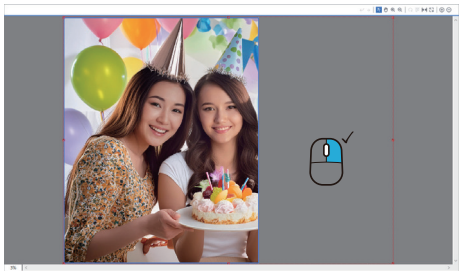


Select the **[Place alternated]** check box to rotate the tiles in even-numbered columns 180 degrees. This will make the seam color difference less visible when the tiles are pasted together.



MEMO

You can show or hide each tile by right-clicking it in the layout area. Hidden tiles are not printed. However it is not possible to set so that all tiles are not printed.





4. **Click**  **.**

You can use the layout area to check how the tiled image is arranged on the media.

MEMO

To arrange the layout, drag the preview of the tiled image directly or click  or  .

5. **Click [OK] to close the [Job Settings] window.**

Printing a Single Image Side by Side: [Step & Repeat]

Prints a single image (job) side by side on the media. You can also select a part of the image and print it side by side or shift the image in the vertical or horizontal direction.

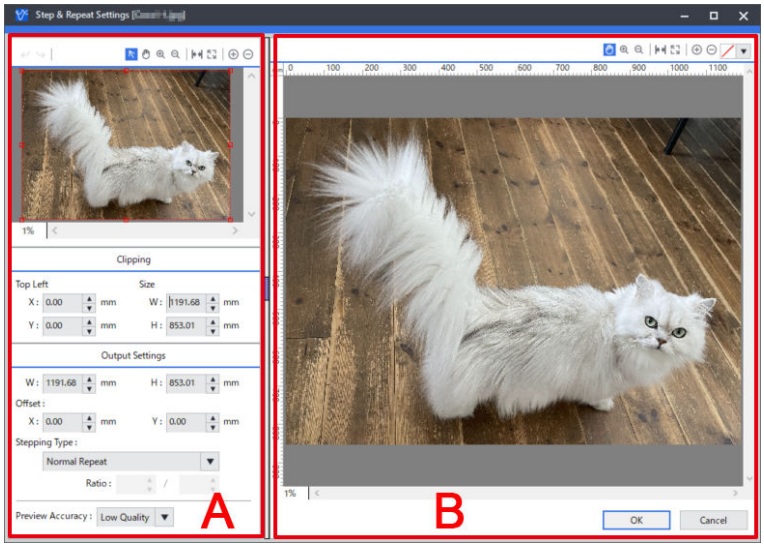


Procedure

1. **Select the job to set.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Step & Repeat] window.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Step & Repeat**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Step & Repeat**] on the menu bar.

   The following window opens and is composed of the layout area (A) and preview area (B).



   - To set the image's area to print, proceed to Step 3.
   - To use the entire image, proceed to Step 4.

3. **Set the image's area to print.**

   There are two ways to configure this setting:

   - **Dragging the mouse in the layout area**

     a. In the layout area, click .

     b. Point to the small square (the clip point) on the clip line (the red line in the figure). The pointer changes to (a shape with a point in the upper-right corner).

c. Drag the clip point to set the clip area. The clipped area appears in the layout area side by side.

MEMO

To fine-tune the clip area, use and to enlarge the preview image, and then drag the clip point again.

- **Entering the values**

a. In [**Size**], enter the width and the height of the clip area.

b. In [**Top Left Position**], enter the location of the upper-left corner of the clip area with the origin at the upper-left corner of the image. The clipped area appears in the layout area side by side.

MEMO

You can also combine both methods to configure the settings. For example, you can set the clip area roughly in the layout area, and then fine-tune the clip area by entering the values.

4. Set the following with [Output Settings].

- Output size ([**W**] and [**H**])

  Make adjustments according to the media size and the number of images to be printed side by side. To print the entire image side by side, set the media size so that it is larger than the output size.
- [**offset**]

  Adjusts the position of the arranged images in the [**X**] direction and [**Y**] direction.
- [**Stepping Type**]
  - [**Normal Repeat**]: Aligns the horizontal and vertical positions of the repeated images.
  - [**Horizontal Repeat**]: Shifts the image horizontally.
  - [**Vertical Repeat**]: Shifts the image vertically.

  When [**Horizontal Repeat**] or [**Vertical Repeat**] is selected, configure [**Ratio**] to decide the image shift ratio.

5. Check how the images are positioned in the layout area.

6. As necessary configure the [Preview Accuracy] setting.

MEMO

If the accuracy is too high, more time will be required for the display.

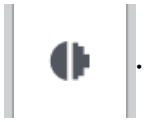
7. Click [OK] to close the [Step & Repeat] window.

Performing Overprinting: [Overprint]

Print in the same location in the following situations.

- You want to increase the white density when printing using white ink for the undercoat.
- You want to print thick layers of gloss when printing using gloss ink.
- If you want to increase the CMYK density when printing on decorative lights or billboards.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.
2. **Click**  **.**
3. **Select the [Ignore Default Settings] check box under [Quality Settings]>[Details].**
4. **Set the [Overprint] count.**
5. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

Printing for Quality and Color Comparisons

Printing While Changing Settings in Small Increments: [**Variation Job**] 190
Step 1: Generate a Variation Job 191
Step 2: Adjust the Printing Size and Print 194
Step 3: Evaluate Variation Printing for Application to a Job 195

Printing While Changing Settings in Small Increments: [Variation Job]

The quality of the printed document is determined by a combination of factors such as the printing settings, printer, ink, and media. Job with settings that change in small increments: Generate [**Variation Job**], output this job, and evaluate the output results of multiple generated variation jobs to quickly approach the desired quality. The settings which can be changed are the following.

Item	Setting to change	Type of variation job
[**Media Type**]>[**Print Quality**]>[**Resolution**]	• [**Media Type**]: PVC, banner, paper, etc. • [**Print Quality**]: [**High Quality**], [**Standard**], [**High Speed**], etc.*1 • [**Resolution**]: 720 × 1440 dpi, 720 × 720 dpi, etc.	P. 191 Compare Quality Settings
[**Color Management**]	True Rich Color 3, PrepressGeneral, etc.	P. 192 Compare Color Management
[**Level Adjustment**]	• [**Print Variation with Various Colors**] You can select from the reference, uncorrected color and eight corrected colors. • [**Print Variation with Specific Color Densities**] You can select from five levels of emphasis for the specified color.	P. 193 Compare Color Adjustment

*1 The resolution is displayed according to the model.

Step 1: Generate a Variation Job

Creating a variation job, whose settings change in small increments, allows for the following three types of comparisons. Select the desired comparison.

- P. 191 Compare Quality Settings
- P. 192 Compare Color Management
- P. 193 Compare Color Adjustment

Compare Quality Settings

Procedure

1. **Select the job to set.**
2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Generate Variation Job] window.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Generate Variation Job**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Generate Variation Job**] on the menu bar.
3. **Select [Compare Quality Settings], and then click [Next].**
4. **Select the media to print on, and then click [Next].**
5. **Select the printing quality, and then click [Next].**
6. **Select the print mode to add to the variation job.**
   The selected variation jobs are listed in the [**Variation Job**] field.

   MEMO
   - You can select and delete variation jobs as well as drag them into different orders in the [**Variation Job**] field.
   - A. and B. next to the print modes in the [**Variation Job**] field are displayed as variation A and variation B in the job list.
7. **Click [OK].**
   A variation job with the selected media and quality is generated in the job list.

RELATED LINKS

- P. 194 Adjust the Printing Size and Print

Compare Color Management

Procedure

1. **Select the job to set.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Generate Variation Job] window.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Generate Variation Job**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Generate Variation Job**] on the menu bar.

3. **Select [Compare Color Management], and then click [Next].**

4. **Select the Color Management setting.**
   The selected Color Management settings are listed in the [**Variation Job**] field.

   MEMO
   - You can select and delete variation jobs as well as drag them into different orders in the [**Variation Job**] field.
   - A. and B. next to the Color Management settings in the [**Variation Job**] field are displayed as variation A and variation B in the job list.

5. **Click [OK].**
   A variation job with the selected Color Management setting is generated in the job list.

RELATED LINKS
- P. 194 Adjust the Printing Size and Print

Compare Color Adjustment

Procedure

1. **Select the job to set.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Generate Variation Job] window.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Generate Variation Job**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Generate Variation Job**] on the menu bar.

3. **Select [Compare Color Adjustment], and then click [Next].**

4. **Select one of the following options, and then click [Next].**
   - **[Print Variation with Various Colors]**
   - **[Print Variation with Specific Color Densities]**

5. **Perform the following according to the selection.**
   - When [**Print Variation with Various Colors**] is selected: Specify the [**Adjustment Level**] (+1 to +5), and then select the color to emphasize (such as magenta, red, and orange).
   - When [**Print Variation with Specific Color Densities**] is selected: Specify the [**Adjustment Color**] (such as magenta, red, and orange), and then select the emphasis level (+1 to +5).

   The selected color and emphasis level are listed in the [**Variation Job**] field.

   MEMO
   - You can select and delete variation jobs as well as drag them into different orders in the [**Variation Job**] field.
   - A. and B. next to the colors in the [**Variation Job**] field are displayed as variation A and variation B in the job list.

6. **Click [OK].**

   A variation job with the selected adjustment color is generated in the job list.

RELATED LINKS

- P. 194 Adjust the Printing Size and Print

Step 2: Adjust the Printing Size and Print

Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Change Print Size] window.**
   - Right-click the variation job, and then click [**Change Print Size**].
   - Select the variation job, then click [**Job**]>[**Change Print Size**] on the menu bar.

2. **Change the following items if necessary:**
   - [**Scaling**]

     You can specify the [**Scale**], [**W**], and [**H**] items.

     These items are linked. Changing one changes the others. For more information, refer to Scaling Jobs for Printing(P. 95).
   - [**Page Range**]

     You can specify the page range for jobs spanning multiple pages.
   - [**Clipping**]

     You can specify the field to print.
     P. 179 Printing the Selected Area of the Image: [**Clip Image**]

3. **Click [OK] to close the [Change Print Size] window.**

4. **Right-click the variation job, and then click [Print].**

   The set variation job is printed.

MEMO

The printing method depends on the variation type as shown below.

- Vertical printing: [**Compare Quality Settings**]
  For the flat table model, switch the media for each variation job.
- Horizontal printing: [**Compare Color Management**], [**Compare Color Adjustment**]
  For the flat table model, switch the media for each page when multiple pages are being printed.

Step 3: Evaluate Variation Printing for Application to a Job

Procedure

1. **Determine the setting to apply from the printing result.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Evaluate Variation Job] window.**
   - Right-click the variation job, and then click [**Evaluate Variation Job**].
   - Select the variation job, then click [**Job**]>[**Evaluate Variation Job**] on the menu bar.

3. **Select the determined variation, and then click [OK].**
   The settings of the selected variation are applied to the reference job.

   MEMO

   If the variation job is not required after application, select the [**Delete Variation Job after Applying Settings**] check box.

Printing Specific Layers

Printing Specific Layers of the Print Data..... 197
Step 1: Creating Print Data 198
Step 2: Printing Specific Layers 199

Printing Specific Layers of the Print Data

For print data in PDF format with a layered structure, each layer can be separately set to be printed or not printed. When creating the print data with design software, create multiple layers in advance. Doing so will allow setting of whether or not to print a white plate for each media color, and separate the cutting lines by layer and set whether or not to perform cutting.

MEMO

This function uses Job Assistant, so it must be installed on the PC.

The following is an example showing print data with five layers. By combining layers, a variety of printing is possible depending on the printer and ink type.



Layer	Contents	Image
1	**Cutting line** This is used when cutting media with a printer that includes a cutting function.	
2	**Gloss** This is used with a printer that includes gloss. It is used with gloss finish: [**GlossVarnish**], matte finish: [**MatteVarnish**], embossing: [**Embossing**], and other printing.	
3	**CMYK** Prints using CMYK ink.	

Layer	Contents	Image
4	**White** This is used with a printer that includes white. It is used to produce the original color that is unaffected by the color of the media.	
5	**Primer** This is used with a printer that includes primer. It improves ink adhesion onto the media (object being printed on).	

Step 1: Creating Print Data

When creating a spot color layer, refer to the following to create the spot color layer on a layer other than a CMYK layer.Printing Using White Ink/Gloss Ink/Primer/Metallic Silver Ink(P. 237)

When creating a cutting layer, refer to the following to create the cutting layer on a layer other than a CMYK layer.

P. 286 Creating with Illustration Software

IMPORTANT

- Locked layers in the print data will be printed. There is no way to change the settings to prevent the layers from being printed.
- Changing the layers being printed is possible only for PDF-format jobs.

Step 2: Printing Specific Layers

Specify the layers to print in the [Job Assistant] window and perform printing.



Procedure

1. **Add the created print data to the job list.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to display the [Job Assistant] window.**
   - Right-click on an added job and click [**Job Assistant**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Job Assistant**] on the menu bar.

3. **[Layer] tab: Click .**
   The name of the layer in the print data is displayed, and a preview of the layers being printed is displayed in the preview window.

4. **Click the icon to the right of a layer that will not be printed.**
   The icon will be displayed with shading, and the layer will not be printed.

5. **Click [OK].**

6. **In the confirmation window, click [Yes].**
   The [**Job Assistant**] window closes. It will be added to the job list as a new job.

7. **Print the job with the configured layer printing settings.**

Printing That Combines Data Files and Templates: [Variable Data]

About Variable Printing 201
Step 1: Create a Template 201
Step 2: Creating a Data File 203
Step 3: Load the Files Required for Variable Printing..... 205
Step 4: Configure the Variable Printing Settings 207
Step 5: Performing Printing 211
Editing a Data File 212
Creating, Editing, and Exporting a Data File..... 213

About Variable Printing

Variable printing is printing which replaces a portion of the printing area such as characters and images, for each printing. Applications include the printing of employee ID cards where the name, department, and photograph differ; tickets with consecutive numbers, and postcard addressee information.

In order to perform variable printing, you will need the following files:

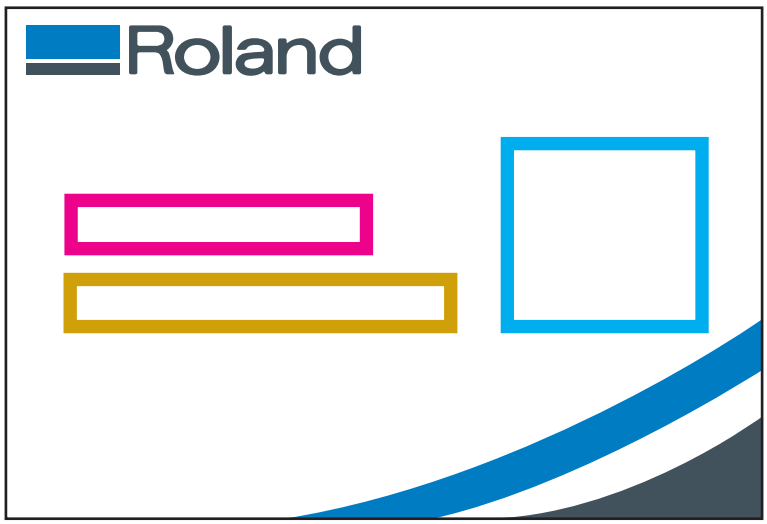
- A template design file containing variable fields to hold unique text or images.
- Data file for specifying the text or images to print
- Image files if you want to print images.

Here the procedure is introduced using the creation of employee ID cards as an example.

Step 1: Create a Template

Use illustration software and create a template for variable printing.

Employee ID template



IMPORTANT

In cases such as when printing on transparent media, a white plate is not printed in the variable fields even when a white plate is added to the template.

Procedure

1. **Start the illustration software and create a new file.**

2. **Decide the fields where variable printing will be performed (fields in which different text and images are printed).**

   MEMO

   Up to 200 variable fields can be created for one template.

3. **Create spot colors with the name VDP_(variable field name) in the same number as the number of variable fields.**

For example, when creating three variable fields for "Department," "Name," and "Photo," create spot colors with the names [**VDP_Department**], [**VDP_Name**], and [**VDP_Photo**]. For the method of creating spot colors, see the instruction manual of the illustration software you are using.

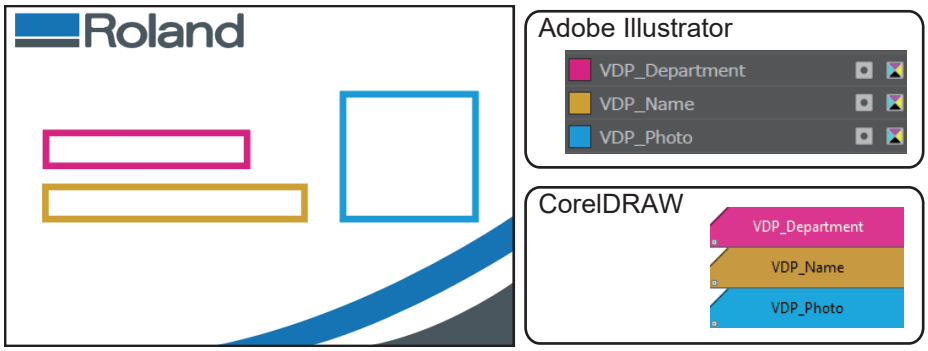
IMPORTANT

Be sure to observe the following points when creating spot colors. If the spot color names are incorrect, VersaWorks will not recognize the variable fields.

- Enter "VDP" in all capital letters.
- Do not omit the "_" (underscore)

4. Using the created spot colors, draw rectangular shapes (rectangles or squares) for the variable fields.

These rectangular shapes will be recognized as variable fields by VersaWorks. Fields with non-rectangular shapes (such as circles and trapezoids) will not be recognized as variable fields by VersaWorks.



5. Save the template in PDF, EPS, or PS format.

Step 2: Creating a Data File

Step 2: Creating a Data File

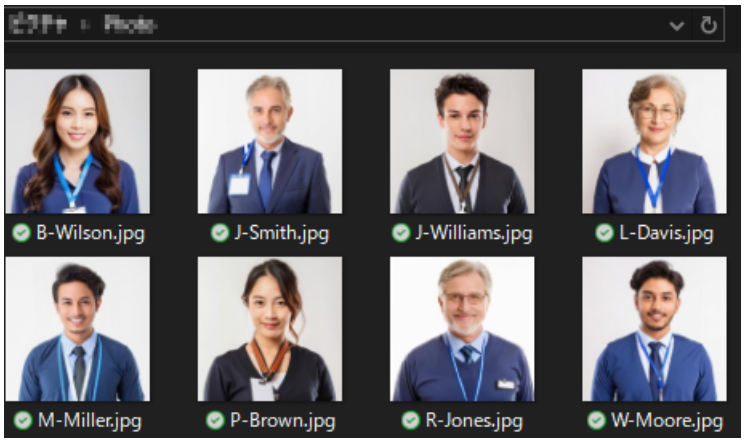
Prepare a data file and image file for printing to a variable field. Use spreadsheet software to create the data file. It is also possible to create and edit in VersaWorks without creating a data file.

P. 213 Creating, Editing, and Exporting a Data File

Data file

	A	B	C
1	VDP_Department	VDP_Name	VDP_Photo
2	General Affairs Department	J Smith	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Photo¥J-Smith.jpg
3	Public Relations Department	M Johnson	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Photo¥M-Johnson.jpg
4	Financial Department	J Williams	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Photo¥J-Williams.jpg
5	Sales Department	P Brown	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Photo¥P-Brown.jpg
6	Marketing Department	R Jones	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Photo¥R-Jones.jpg
7	Development Department	L Davis	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Photo¥L-Davis.jpg
8	Quality Control Department	M Miller	C:¥Users¥[redacted]¥Photo¥M-Miller.jpg

Image file



Procedure

1. **Save the employee name image files to the desired folder.**

   Save image files in file formats that can be directly opened in VersaWorks (TIFF (LZW-compressed or uncompressed), EPS, JPEG, PDF, or PostScript).

2. **Start the spreadsheet software.**

3. **On the first line, enter the [VDP_Department], [VDP_Name], and [VDP_Photo] (A) that were created in Step 1: Create a Template(P. 201).**

4. **Enter the characters listed (B) in each variable field and the absolute path of the image files that were saved in Step 1.**

5. **Save the file.**

   Save the file in one of the following file formats:

- .csv (comma-delimited): Recommendations
- .txt (tab-delimited)
- .prn (space-delimited)
- .xml (XML data)

MEMO

You can also load created files into VersaWorks and edit them there.
P. 212 Editing a Data File

Step 3: Load the Files Required for Variable Printing

Step 3: Load the Files Required for Variable Printing

Follow the procedure below to add the template file to the job list and load the variable print data file.

Procedure

1. **Add the template file for variable printing to the job list.**

   Check that is displayed for [**Special Items**] in the preview area.

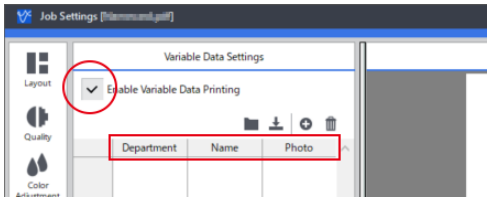
2. **In the job list, double-click the job.**

   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

3. **Click** .

4. **Select the [Enable Variable Data Printing] check box.**

   A preview of the template is displayed in the layout area, and the [**Attribute**] window appears. The variable field name ("VDP_" deleted from the spot color name) specified in Step 1: Create a Template(P. 201) is also displayed in the first line of the [**Variable Data Settings**] list.

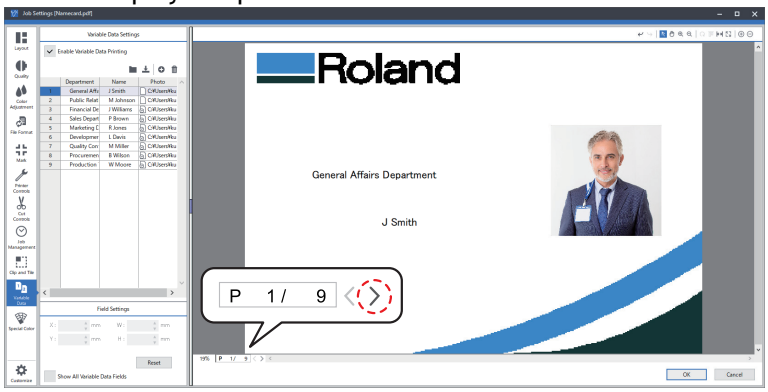


5. **Click** .

   The window for selecting the file appears.

6. **Select the data file created in Step 2: Creating a Data File(P. 203), and then click [Open].**

   The contents of the data file are displayed in the table. Click the [>] at the bottom of the layout area to display the preview for each data set.



MEMO

- There are two types of variable fields: [**Image**] and [**Text**]. The type of each variable field is displayed in the [**Type**] list in the [**Attribute**] window. When the data file is loaded, data that starts with strings that denote paths (such as "C:\") is automatically recognized as [**Image**], otherwise it is automatically recognized as [**Text**].
- The display width of the layout area and settings area can be changed.

Step 4: Configure the Variable Printing Settings

Step 4: Configure the Variable Printing Settings

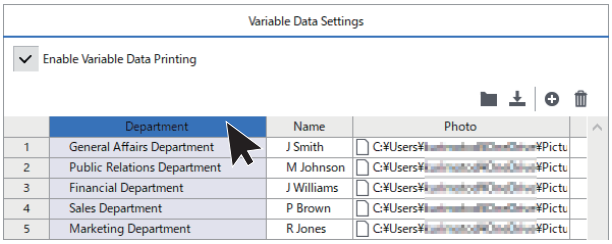
Configure the attributes (size, color, font, etc.) of the variable fields.

Procedure

1. **Select the field to be configured.**

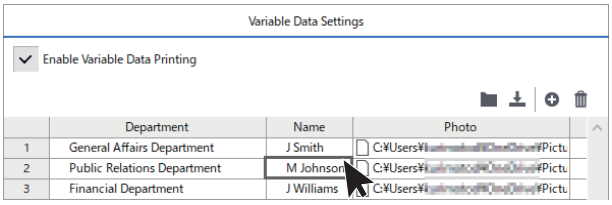
   - **When applying the same settings to all data**

     Select the first row (the field name) in the list. The settings will be applied to all the data.



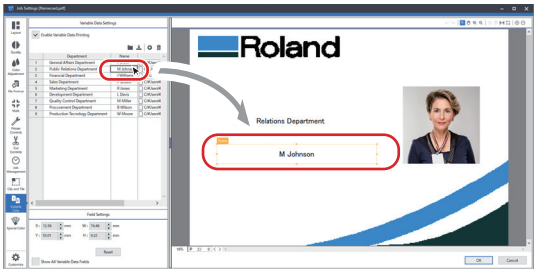
   - **When applying the settings only to specific data**

     Select the cell to configure.



MEMO

The selected column or cell is displayed in the layout area with a border line and field name.



2. **Configure the [Text] attributes in the [Attribute] window.**

   - **[Font]**

     Selects the font type.

   - **[Font Size]**

     Sets the font size.

   - **[Tracking]**

     Sets the spacing between two characters. Set this to 100 to make the spacing one-character wide.

   - **[Auto Sizing]**

     Select this check box to automatically adjust the font size to fit the text in the variable field when the text is larger than the variable field.

- **[Alignment]**

  Sets the alignment of the text in the variable field.
- **[Rotate]**

  Rotates the text in the variable field in units of 90 degrees.
- **[Mirror]**

  Horizontally mirrors the text in the variable field.
- **[Opacity]**

  Sets the opacity of the entire variable field. Set this to 0% to make the target transparent.
- **[Draw on White Background]**

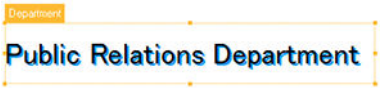
  Select this check box to print the background object on top when the background object and the variable field overlap.
- **[Effect]**

  I : Italic, B : Bold, U : Underline, S : Shadow, ◎ : Outline can be set.
- **[offset]**

  When S (shadow) was selected for **[Effect]**, sets the offset widths of shadow characters as a percentage.

MEMO

Example: Offset: 10% (blue shadow)

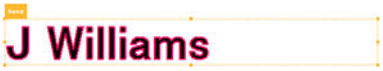


- **[Stroke]**

  When ◎ (outline) was selected for **[Effect]**, set the stroke width as a number of points.

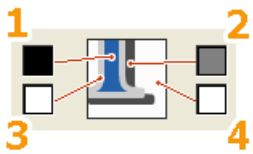
MEMO

Example: Stroke width: 1 pt (red outline)



- **[Color]**

  Set the text (1), shadow (2), outline (3) and variable field color (4).



  Click the square to display the **[Color Settings]** window.

  Select **[RGB]**, **[CMYK]**, or **[Transparent]** for **[ColorSpace]**. When **[RGB]** or **[CMYK]** is selected, use the slider bar or enter the value to set each color value.

3. Configure the [Image] attributes in the [Attribute] window.

- **[Fit]**

Sets whether to fit the image in the variable field. Set one of the following for the original image (1).

- [**None**] (2): Places the original image without resizing.
- [**Fit to Fields**] (3): Changes the size of the image to fit in the variable field. The horizontal to vertical ratio is not maintained.
- [**Fit proportionally**] (4): Changes the size of the image proportionally to fit either in the height or width of the variable field.



- [**Alignment**]

  Selects the alignment of the image in the variable field.
- [**Rotate**]

  Rotates the image in the variable field in units of 90 degrees.
- [**Mirror**]

  Horizontally mirrors the image in the variable field.
- [**Opacity**]

  Sets the opacity of the image. Set this to 0% to make the target transparent.
- [**Draw on White Background**]

  Select this check box to print the background object on top when the background object and the variable field overlap.
- [**Color**]

  Sets the background color inside the variable field.

  Select [**RGB**], [**CMYK**], or [**Transparent**] for [**ColorSpace**]. When [**RGB**] or [**CMYK**] is selected, use the slider bar or enter the value to set each color value.

4. **As necessary, change the size and position of the variable field.**

(1) **Select the field to change.**

- **Applying the same changes to all data**

  Select the first row (the field name) in the list. The changes are applied to all data.
- **Changing only specific data**

  Select the cell to change.

(2) **Change the field.**

- Changing with [**Field Settings**]

  Use [**X**] and [**Y**] to change the field position. Specifically, set the distance between the top left corner of the job and the top left corner of the variable field.

  [**W**] and [**H**] set the variable field size.
- **Changing in the layout area**

  Aligning the pointer with the selected field changes the pointer to a ✥ shape. Drag the field at this point to move it. Aligning the pointer with the squares on the border line of the selected field changes the pointer to a ⇔ shape. Drag the square to adjust the size of the variable field.

MEMO

- To undo or redo operations, use ↩ or ↪ (respectively).
- Click [**Reset**] with a variable field selected to revert any changes made to the field (to its size or position) to the original settings.
- When [**Show All Variable Data Fields**] is selected, the border lines and variable names for all set variable fields are displayed in the layout area.
- The data's cell color changes if the attribute setting differs from that of the other data.

5. **Configure other [Job Settings] as necessary.**

Example

- **[Layout]**>**[Print Properties]**>**[Orientation]**
- **[Cut Controls]**>**[Cutting Options]**>**[Cut Image Boundaries]**

6. **Click [OK].**

Step 5: Performing Printing

Step 5: Performing Printing

Follow the procedure below to start variable printing.

Procedure

1. **Select the job from the job list.**

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **Click [Print].**
   - If Printing Only Once at All Times(P. 35) is set, processing by the RIP to output is executed.
   - If the above is not set, perform the following.
     a. The [**Advanced Print Settings**] window appears. Set [**Print Count**].
     b. Click [**Print**].
        Processing by the RIP to output is executed.

Editing a Data File

After loading a data file into VersaWorks, you can change text, add data, and do other editing.

To edit, use the list in [**Variable Data**]>[**Variable Data Settings**] under [**Job Settings**], and edit as shown below.

- **Changing text or images**

  Double-click the cell that you want to change in order to enter the text. On fields with the [**Image**] attribute, you can right-click and select [**Browse**] to display the [**Load from File**] window and change the image file.
- **Adding data**

  Click ⊕ to add a new row at the bottom of the list. Select each cell and enter the text or specify the image file.
- **Deleting data**

  Click the number of the data to be deleted, and then click 🗑.
- **Saving the data file**

  Click ⬇. For [**File type**], select CSV (comma-delimited), Text (tab-delimited or space-delimited), or XML, and then click [**Save...**].

MEMO

The data's cell color changes if the attribute setting differs from that of the other data.

Creating, Editing, and Exporting a Data File

When a template is added to the job list, the data can be edited in VersaWorks without the use of spreadsheet software. When the amount of editing is large, it is possible to export the data file and edit it with editing software, then import it. If a data file that was created with spreadsheet software cannot be successfully loaded into VersaWorks, then creating the data file with VersaWorks, and exporting and editing it before loading it, will facilitate loading.

Procedure

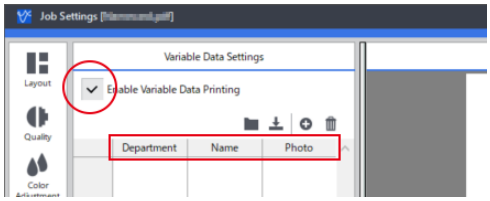
Creating and editing a data file

1. **Add a template file to the job list.**
   Check that is displayed for [**Special Items**] in the preview area.

2. **In the job list, double-click the job.**
   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

3. **Click** .

4. **Select the [Enable Variable Data Printing] check box.**
   A preview of the template is displayed in the layout area, and the [**Attribute**] window appears. The variable field name ("VDP_" deleted from the spot color name) specified in Step 1: Create a Template(P. 201) is also displayed in the first line of the [**Variable Data Settings**] list.



5. **Click** .
   A row is added to the table. Clicking multiple times will add a number of rows equal to the number of clicks.

6. **Edit the table and create the data file.**

7. **Click [OK] .**
   The edited contents are saved.

Exporting and editing a data file

8. **When the amount of editing is large, click to export the data file.**
   The [**Save As**] window appears. Select the file format to save from the following.
   - CSV file (comma-delimited) (*.csv)
   - Text file (tab-delimited) (*.txt)
   - Text file (space-delimited) (*.prn)
   - XML file (*.xml)

9. **Open and edit the saved data file.**

Use software suitable for file editing, and edit and save the file.

Importing a data file

10. **Click in the window shown in Step 4.**

The window for selecting the file appears.

11. **Select the data file that was saved in Step 7 and click [Open].**

The contents of the edited data file are displayed in the table.

Printing Jobs Layered on Top of Each Other

Printing Multiple Jobs Layered on Top of Each Other: [**Layered Job**] 216
1. Overlapping Multiple Jobs to Create a Single Job..... 216
2. A: Performing Pullback Printing..... 217
2. B: Performing One Pass Multilayer Printing 218
Composing TIFF Image Print Data: [**Compose Job**] 219
Step 1: Preparing CMYK and Grayscale Print Data 219
Step 2: Composing CMYK Print Data and Grayscale Print Data 220

Printing Multiple Jobs Layered on Top of Each Other: [Layered Job]

A layered job is one in which multiple jobs are layered on top of each other. With a layered job, multiple jobs can be layered and printed with a single printing operation.

Two methods are available with layered jobs: "pull-back printing," in which the media is pulled back and printed on, and "one pass multilayer printing," which prints on all layers together. One pass multilayer printing may result in less printing misalignment than pullback printing.

However, one pass multilayer printing may not be possible depending on the model you are using or the job.

1. Overlapping Multiple Jobs to Create a Single Job

Select multiple jobs from the job list and create a layered job.

MEMO

Printing and cutting layered jobs

- The only cutting lines that are enabled are those on the top layer.
- When creating cutting lines in VersaWorks, add them to the top layer.

Procedure

1. **Select multiple jobs from the job list.**

   To select multiple jobs, perform one of the following operations:

   - While holding down the Ctrl key, click the jobs one by one.
   - While holding down the Shift key, click the first job to select, and then click the last job to select.

   MEMO

   In a layered job, the layers are overlaid in the order they are selected starting from the top. To specify the layer position, select the jobs in order from the bottom layer.

2. **A layered job can be generated by either of the following methods.**

   - Right-click and click [**Generate Layered Job**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Generate Layered Job**] on the menu bar.

- When performing pullback printing, proceed to 2. A: Performing Pullback Printing(P. 217).
- When performing one pass multilayer printing, proceed to 2. B: Performing One Pass Multilayer Printing(P. 218).

2. A: Performing Pullback Printing

Pullback and printing are performed for each job in the job number sequence.

Procedure

1. Select the layered job.
2. Click  .

2. B: Performing One Pass Multilayer Printing

With some models, one pass multilayer printing is possible for layered jobs with the following three-layer configurations. Perform pullback printing for layered jobs with two-layer configurations or configurations other than those listed below.

- [**CMYK-> Wh -> CMYK**]: When you want to, for example, print on transparent film and display the printed document from both the printed surface and the opposite surface
- [**Pr -> Wh -> CMYK**]: When you want to, for example, improve the adhesion of ink to media that peels off easily and express vibrant images using CMYK on a base of white ink
- [**Pr -> CMYK -> Wh**]: When you want to, for example, improve the adhesion of ink to media that peels off easily, express vibrant images using CMYK on a base of white ink, and display the images from the surface opposite the printed surface (the transparent surface)
- [**Wh -> CMYK -> Gl**]: When you want to, for example, print images on a base of white ink, eliminate the effect of the media's color, and add textures and other expressions

MEMO

You can print marks and job information on layered jobs when the [One Pass Multilayer Printing] check box is selected.

- Marks are only added when the job on each layer has the same size, position, and orientation.
- Crop marks are added to the [**Entire Area**].

Procedure

1. **Double-click [Layered Job].**

   The [**Job Settings**] window ([**Quality**], [**Layered Printing Method**], and preview windows) and [**Layers**] window appear.

   To hide layers in the preview window, click in the [**Layers**] window.

2. **Select the [One Pass Multilayer Printing] check box.**

   The check box will be selected if the data can be used for one pass multilayer printing. [**Current Layer Count**] and [**Number of Layers Possible for One Pass Multilayer Printing**] are displayed if the data cannot be used for one pass multilayer printing.

3. **The message [The layered job will be reconfigured to change the printing method. Do you want to continue?] appears. Click [Yes].**

   The [**Job Settings**] window closes. After the job is reconfigured, the [**Job Settings**] window appears again.

4. **Select items such as [Media Type], [Print Quality], and [Mode] from [Quality]>[Quality Settings].**

   MEMO

   The time spent on one pass multilayer printing can be reduced for some types of media.
   In the [**Job Settings**] window, increase the [**Feed Speed**] under [**Quality**]>[**Quality Settings**] to increase the speed that media is fed and pulled back, reducing the printing time. However, misalignment may occur depending on the media, so test the printing and determine the appropriate [**Feed Speed**].

5. **Click [OK] to close the [Job Settings] window.**

6. **Click to print.**

Composing TIFF Image Print Data: [Compose Job]

Combine two TIFF images (CMYK color and grayscale images of the same size) to compose a single job. The grayscale job can be used as a white plate or gloss plate.

Depending on the model you are using, creation of composed jobs may not be possible.

Step 1: Preparing CMYK and Grayscale Print Data

The example in the following explanation uses print data where photo data was cut out and text was added.

Print data to create





Procedure

1. **Use the design software and create the print data.**

2. **Save the CMYK print data.**
   - Color: CMYK
   - Save format: TIFF

3. **Save the grayscale print data.**
   - Color: Grayscale
   - Save format: TIFF

   MEMO

   Change only the color and save so that the grayscale print data has the same number of horizontal and vertical pixels as the CMYK data.

Step 2: Composing CMYK Print Data and Grayscale Print Data

Procedure

1. **Add the CMYK and grayscale print data to the job list.**

2. **Create a composed job.**
   - Select two jobs (CMYK and grayscale), then right-click and click [**Compose Job**].
   - Select two jobs and click [**Job**]>[**Compose**].

   A composed job is created from the two selected jobs. The name [**Compose Job date-number**] is assigned to the composed job.

MEMO

When printing a composed job, specify a mode that includes white or gloss with [**Quality**]>[**Quality Settings**]>[**Mode**] under [**Job Settings**].

Printing Using the Rotary Axis Unit

Printing on a Cylindrical Object 222

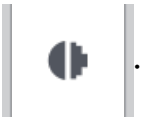
Printing on a Cylindrical Object

The rotary axis unit is used to print on a cylindrical object (media) while it is rotated.
If the media has a small diameter, reduce the number of nozzles (the feed length) to use. Measure the diameter of the media in advance.

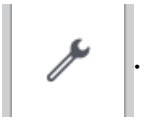
Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder.

2. **Click**  .

3. **Select [Rotary] for [Media Type].**

4. **Click**  .

5. **Use [Rotary Controls] to set the number of nozzles to use in printing.**
   (1) **Click [Automatic Calculation].**
   (2) **Enter the media diameter.**
   The value calculated from the media diameter is displayed next to [**Nozzle Amount to Use in Printing**].
   (3) **Click [Apply].**
   (4) **As necessary, adjust the number of nozzles to use.**
   Reducing the number of nozzles increases the printing quality but also increases the printing time. Increasing the number of nozzles reduces the printing time but affects the printing quality due to issues such as the generation of mist because the printed surface is far away. Consider the printing quality and the printing time while making adjustments.

6. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .
     The changes are reflected in the layout area of the top window.

7. **Click** .
   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Using Spot Colors and Special Colors

Using Spot Colors

About Spot Colors 225
Printing with Spot Colors 226
Step 1: Select the Spot Color 226
Step 2: Create Print Data with Illustration Software 227
Step 3: Performing Printing 228
Printing Using the Roland Color System Library 230
Step 1: Printing a Color Chart 230
Step 2: Registering Roland Color System Library Colors in Illustration Software 233
Step 3: Create Print Data with Illustration Software 235
Step 4: Performing Printing 236
Printing Using White Ink/Gloss Ink/Primer/Metallic Silver Ink 237
Step 1: Registering a Spot Color in Illustration Software 237
Step 2: Create Print Data with Illustration Software 240
Step 3: Perform Printing 241
Using a Spot Color Library 242
Creating a Spot Color Library 242
Saving the Spot Color Library as a File 244
Importing a Saved Spot Color Library 245
Deleting a Spot Color Library 246
Replicating and Editing a Spot Color Library 247
Adjusting the Output Color of a Spot Color: [**Nearest Color Finder**] 248
Step 1: Print the Spot Color Chart 248
Step 2: Select and Apply the Desired Color 250
Managing the [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] 251
Readjusting the Adjustment Results in [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] 252
Using [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] in Other Computers 253
Other Spot Color Functions 254
Replacing or Fine-tuning the Output Color of a Spot Color 254
Assigning a Color from Another Spot Color Library to a Newly Created Spot Color Library 256
Assigning White/Metallic Silver/Gloss/Primer to a Spot Color in Existing Print Data 258
Importing Spot Colors and Creating a Spot Color Library 260
Generation of Spot Color Plates (White, Gloss, Primer) 261
Special Color Plate Generation with VersaWorks 261
Spot Color Plate Generation with Job Assistant 264
Adjusting the Position and Size of Spot Color Plates 269
Correcting the Position of Spot Color Plates 269
Correcting the Size of Spot Color Plates 271

About Spot Colors

Spot colors are special colors that are not process colors (CMYK). In this manual, "special mixture colors such as DIC and PANTONE," "colors for which a library has been created in VersaWorks," "Roland DG Corporation white, gloss, primer, and metallic silver inks," and "areas specified for variable printing" are called spot colors. The main features are shown below.

- Special mixture colors such as DIC and PANTONE are used when specifying company image colors or similar colors. It is also possible to select a spot color from the color samples and specify the color that you want to express. VersaWorks converts the spot colors explained above to process colors for printing. However because spot colors that were converted to process colors are affected by the ink, media, and other factors, VersaWorks includes a function for adjusting the output color of spot colors.
- VersaWorks includes "spot color libraries" for CMYK inks. There is also a separate color library for green, red, orange, and metallic silver inks. For gloss inks, texture and brio-coat libraries are also separately prepared. It is also possible to create and use newly arranged spot color libraries.
- With a printer that includes white, gloss, primer, and metallic silver inks, it is possible to set these "named spot colors" when printing. Set spot colors are displayed as special items in the preview area.
- With variable printing which replaces some characters and images one at a time, the replacement print area is specified using spot colors.

MEMO

VersaWorks can only recognize spot colors in vector data. Colors used in raster data such as bitmap images cannot be recognized.

Printing with Spot Colors

First decide the spot colors to use and specify the spot colors in the print data. Then configure the spot color settings in VersaWorks and perform printing.

Step 1: Select the Spot Color

Before creating print data with illustration software, check the color chart that was printed from the DIC or PANTONE color sample book or the VersaWorks spot color library, and select the spot color to use. Or, you can select the spot color by the following procedure.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Spot Color Settings] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Spot Color Settings**] window appears.

2. **Select the [Spot Color Management] from the [Library List].**
   Check [**Color Type**] and confirm that the correct [**Spot Color Management**] is selected.
   - Lab: Can be used with all models.
   - CMYK*: Cannot be used when an unsupported color (ink) is included.

   MEMO
   - With a spot color library where [**Attribute**] is [**Preset**], the contents can only be checked.
   - With a [**User Defined**] spot color library, the contents can be edited.
     P. 247 Replicating and Editing a Spot Color Library

3. **From the list of spot colors in the spot color library selected on the right side of the screen, make a note of the [Spot Color Name] that is used.**

4. **Click [OK] to close the [Spot Color Settings] window.**

Step 2: Create Print Data with Illustration Software

Specify the spot color in the print data with the illustration software you are using.

MEMO

For the procedure for specifying spot colors, see the instruction manual of the illustration software you are using.

Procedure

1. **Create print data with the specified spot color that was noted in Step 1.**

   MEMO

   Set so that the spot color name noted in Step 1: Select the Spot Color(P. 226) matches the spot color name in the illustration software. If the names do not match, VersaWorks will not recognize them as spot colors. Names of spot colors are case-sensitive, so make sure the name is typed correctly.

2. **Save the created data.**

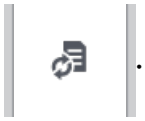
Step 3: Performing Printing

Check that the spot color has been recognized, then start printing.

Procedure

1. **Add the print data where the spot color was specified to the job list.**
   P. 61 Add Print Data to the Job List

2. **Double-click the target file in the job list.**
   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

3. **Click**  .

4. **Select the [Convert Spot Color] check box.**
   When spot colors are properly recognized, the following items are displayed:

[**Color Name**]	The name of the spot color used with the job is displayed. **MEMO** If the spot color is one where the color type is defined in the Lab color space, a caution mark (⚠) is displayed when this color cannot be reproduced (it is out of the gamut) with the selected media and quality.
[**Nearest Color Finder**]	When the [**Nearest Color Finder**]>[**Apply Adjusted Color**] check box is selected,  is displayed for any spot colors where the Nearest Color Finder adjustments can be applied.
[**Output Color**]	Displays the process color values to which the spot color has been converted.

   Click [**Details**] to display the [**Spot Color List**] window.

5. **For spot colors defined in the Lab color space, select the color matching method from the [Matching Method] list.**
   Color matching is performed according to this setting.
   P. 132 Characteristics of Each Matching Method
   The [**Color Settings**]>[**Advanced**]>[**Matching Method**] setting under [**Quality**] will be ignored.

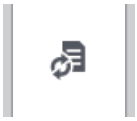
   IMPORTANT
   Spot colors not defined in the Lab color space will be printed according to the density curve set in the [**Media Explorer**] window. But in this case, the ink limit does not apply. Be cautious of excessive ink usage when printing.

6. **Configure the media settings and other such settings necessary for printing.**

7. **Click [OK] to close the [Job Settings] window.**

8. **Click**  .
   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

MEMO

- You can fine-tune the output color if necessary.
- You can also enable [**Convert Spot Color**] by clicking  in the [**Queue Properties**] window. In this case, spot color conversion will be performed even if you do not enable this function in the [**Job Settings**] window.

Printing Using the Roland Color System Library

The Roland Color System Library is Roland DG's original spot color library. It consists of more than 1,000 spot colors.

When this library is used, you can easily create a color chart with your printer. In contrast to commercially available color charts, this feature generates a color chart printed using "your printer" and "your media" (slight color differences may occur depending on the conditions of the printer and media). By selecting colors from this color chart and creating print data with these colors, you can accurately reproduce the desired colors.

Step 1: Printing a Color Chart

Print a Roland Color System Library color chart.

MEMO

The printer name, serial number, media type, ink type, and other information is printed in the color chart.

Procedure

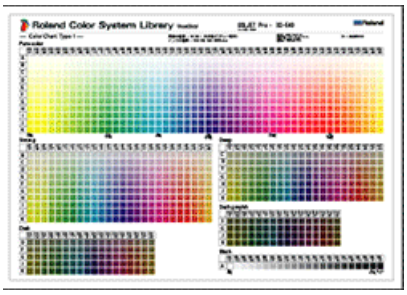
1. **Load into the printer the media on which the color chart will be printed.**
2. **Click for the queue folder to be used.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.
3. **Click**  **.**
4. **Configure the settings in [Quality Settings] and [Color Settings].**

   IMPORTANT

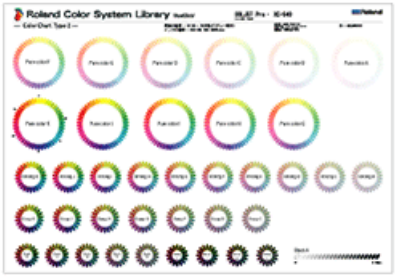
   When printing a color chart, the settings from the [**Queue Properties**] window are applied to these setting items. You cannot change the settings using the [**Job Settings**] window after the job has been added to the job list.
5. **To close the [Queue Properties] window, click [OK].**
6. **Click [Media] in the menu bar, and then click the color chart that you want to print.**
   - **[Color Chart Type-1]**

     The colors in the library are categorized by saturation and arranged to vary in hue in the horizontal direction and in brightness in the vertical direction. To print this color chart in its original size, you need A1-size or larger media.



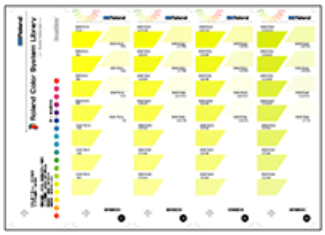
- **[Color Chart Type-2]**

  The colors in the library are categorized by color tone and a color wheel is printed for each tone. (Black colors are arranged linearly by brightness.) To print this color chart in its original size, you need A1-size or larger media.



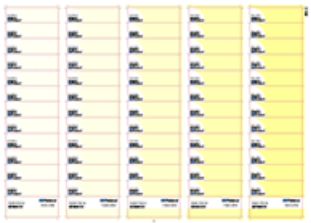
- **[Color Selector]**

  Prints the ink combination chart. The chart shows the ink combination used for printing each spot color. Although each page is printed in A4 size, you can cut the pieces along the trimming marks and bind them in numeric order (outline numbers) to create a color sample book that can be used to compare the colors.



- **[Color Chips]**

  Prints 12 color chips per color for 5 colors in A4 size. The colors are categorized by color tone. Click **[Color Chips]** and click the tone name to print the color chips for the selected tone.



MEMO

[Color Chips] are printed with cutting lines so that the color chips can be trimmed and used individually. If you print the color chips on media with a backing paper using a printer with a cutting function, you can create color chip stickers by setting **[Cutting Options]**>**[Operation Mode]** under **[Cut Controls]** to **[Print & Cut]**.

The following message appears: **[The following job will be printed. Do you want to continue?]**

Check whether the media loaded in the printer is large enough for the displayed page size.

7. **Specify the queue folder with [Add Job To] and click [OK].**
   The selected type of color chart is added to the job list.

8. **Double-click the color chart that was added to the job list.**
   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

9. **Click**  **.**

10. **Configure the [Media Settings] and other settings.**

11. **Click [OK] to close the [Job Settings] window.**

12. **Click**  **.**
    The selected color chart is printed.

Step 2: Registering Roland Color System Library Colors in Illustration Software

Load Roland Color System Library colors into the illustration software color palette. This is very useful, as this allows you to easily specify the spot colors from the color palette when creating print data.

VersaWorks comes with palette data for Adobe Illustrator and CorelDRAW. Register this data in the illustration software. Save these data files on the RIP server (computer where VersaWorks is installed) to the target computer (the computer on which Adobe Illustrator or CorelDRAW is installed).

When Using Adobe Illustrator

This section explains how to register a color system library color in Adobe Illustrator.

MEMO

With VersaWorks, in addition to the spot color registered here (**"Roland Color System Library"**), the following libraries are prepared. Because it is possible to register for all off them with a single process, it is recommended that you copy and paste all files.

- **Roland Grapac Bri-o-coat Library**
- **Roland Green Color System Library**
- **Roland Orange Color System Library**
- **Roland Red Color System Library**
- **Roland Metallic Color System Library**
- **Roland Metallic Texture System Library**
- **Roland Texture System Library**
- **Roland Metallic Color**
- **Roland VersaWorks**

Procedure

1. **On the RIP server (the computer on which VersaWorks has been installed), open the folder [C:\Program Files\VersaWorks\Swatch\Illustrator].**

2. **Copy the "Roland Color System Library.ai" file.**

   MEMO

   - Copy the "**Roland Color System Library.ai**" file. Do not cut or move this file.
   - If the target computer (computer where Adobe Illustrator is installed) is not the RIP server, use the network or a piece of external media to copy this file.

3. **Open the [Swatch] or [Swatch Library] folder in [C:\Program Files\Adobe\Adobe Illustrator 20**\Presets\(Language)] on the target computer.**

4. **Paste the "Roland Color System Library.ai" file.**

5. **Start Adobe Illustrator on the target computer.**

6. **On the Adobe Illustrator menu, click [Window]>[Swatch Libraries]>[Roland Color System Library].**

   The "**Roland Color System Library**" panel is displayed. This completes the registration procedure.

When Using CorelDRAW

This section explains how to register a color system library color in CorelDRAW.

MEMO

The following procedure corresponds to CorelDRAW version 24.3.0.571.
The procedure may vary depending on the version of this software. For details of the version, see the CorelDRAW website.

Procedure

1. **On the RIP server (the computer on which VersaWorks has been installed), open the folder [C:\Program Files\VersaWorks\Swatch\CorelDRAW].**

2. **Copy the "userinks.cpl" file.**

   MEMO

   - Copy the "**userinks.cpl**" file. Do not cut or move this file.
   - If the target computer (computer where CorelDRAW is installed) is not the RIP server, use the network or a piece of external media to copy this file.

3. **Copy and paste the "userinks.cpl" file to the target computer.**

   MEMO

   The paste destination will be specified later. For now, paste it in any location.

4. **Start CorelDRAW.**

5. **On the menu in CorelDRAW, select [Window]>[Color Palettes]>[Palettes].**
   The [**Palettes**] window appears.

6. **Click  under the drop-down list.**

7. **Select the "userinks.cpl" file that was pasted in Step 3, and click [Open].**

8. **Delete the "userinks.cpl" file that you pasted in Step 3.**

Step 3: Create Print Data with Illustration Software

Create print data with illustration software using the spot colors that are registered in the Roland Color System Library.

MEMO

For the procedure for specifying spot colors, see the instruction manual of the illustration software you are using.

Procedure

1. **Create print data with specified spot color that is registered in Roland Color System Library.**
2. **Save the created data.**

Step 4: Performing Printing

The method of printing using Roland Color System Library spot colors is the same as when printing using other spot colors.

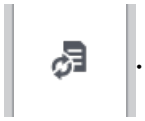
Procedure

1. **Add the print data where the spot color was specified to the job list.**

   P. 61 Add Print Data to the Job List

2. **Double-click the target file in the job list.**

   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

3. **Click**  **.**

4. **Select the [Convert Spot Color] check box.**

   When spot colors are properly recognized, the following items are displayed:

[**Color Name**]	The name of the spot color used with the job is displayed. **MEMO** If the spot color is one defined in the Lab color space, a caution mark (⚠) is displayed when this color cannot be reproduced (it is out of the gamut) with the selected media and quality.
[**Nearest Color Finder**]	When the [**Nearest Color Finder**]>[**Apply Adjusted Color**] check box is selected,  is displayed for any spot colors where the Nearest Color Finder adjustments can be applied.
[**Output Color**]	Displays the process color values to which the spot color has been converted.

5. **Configure [Layout], [Quality], and other settings necessary for printing.**

6. **Click [OK] to close the [Job Settings] window.**

7. **Click**  **.**

   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Printing Using White Ink/Gloss Ink/Primer/Metallic Silver Ink

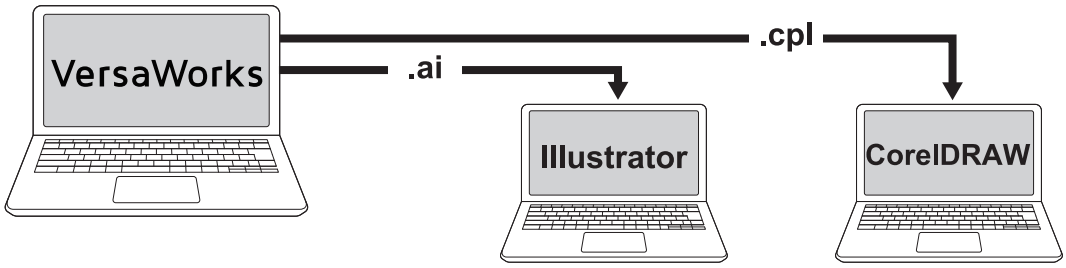
When printing using Roland DG Corporation's genuine white ink, gloss ink, primer, or metallic silver ink, it is necessary to specify these spot colors with the print data so that they can be recognized by VersaWorks.

First register the white, gloss, Primer, and metallic silver spot colors in the illustration software. Then create the print data and configure the various settings with VersaWorks before printing.

Step 1: Registering a Spot Color in Illustration Software

Here, load a spot color into the color palette of the illustration software. This is very useful, as this allows you to easily specify the spot colors from the color palette when creating print data.

VersaWorks comes with palette data for Adobe Illustrator and CorelDRAW. Register this data in the illustration software. Save these data files on the RIP server (computer where VersaWorks is installed) to the target computer (the computer on which Adobe Illustrator or CorelDRAW is installed).



When Using Adobe Illustrator

This section explains how to register a color system library color in Adobe Illustrator.

MEMO

With VersaWorks, in addition to the spot color registered here (**"Roland VersaWorks"**), the following libraries are prepared. Because it is possible to register for all off them with a single process, it is recommended that you copy and paste all files.

- **Roland Color System Library**
- **Roland Grapac Bri-o-coat Library**
- **Roland Green Color System Library**
- **Roland Orange Color System Library**
- **Roland Red Color System Library**
- **Roland Metallic Color System Library**
- **Roland Metallic Texture System Library**
- **Roland Texture System Library**
- **Roland Metallic Color**

Procedure

1. **On the RIP server (the computer on which VersaWorks has been installed), open the folder [C:\Program Files\VersaWorks\Swatch\Illustrator].**

2. **Copy the "Roland VersaWorks.ai" file.**

   MEMO

   - Copy the **"Roland VersaWorks.ai"** file. Do not cut or move this file.

- If the target computer (computer where Adobe Illustrator is installed) is not the RIP server, use the network or a piece of external media to copy this file.

3. **Open the [Swatch] or [Swatch Library] folder in [C:\Program Files\Adobe\Adobe Illustrator 20**\Presets\(Language)] on the target computer.**

4. **Paste the "Roland VersaWorks.ai" file.**

5. **Start Adobe Illustrator on the target computer.**

6. **From the Adobe Illustrator menu, click [Window]>[Swatch Library]>[RolandVersaWorks].**

   The "**Roland VersaWorks**" panel is displayed. This completes the registration procedure.

When Using CorelDRAW

This section explains how to register a color system library color in CorelDRAW.

MEMO

The following procedure corresponds to CorelDRAW version 24.3.0.571.
The procedure may vary depending on the version of this software. For details of the version, see the CorelDRAW website.

Procedure

1. **On the RIP server (the computer on which VersaWorks has been installed), open the folder [C:\Program Files\VersaWorks\Swatch\CorelDRAW].**

2. **Copy the "userinks.cpl" file.**

   MEMO

   - Copy the "**userinks.cpl**" file. Do not cut or move this file.
   - If the target computer (computer where CorelDRAW is installed) is not the RIP server, use the network or a piece of external media to copy this file.

3. **Copy and paste the "userinks.cpl" file to the target computer.**

   MEMO

   The paste destination will be specified later. For now, paste it in any location.

4. **Start CorelDRAW.**

5. **On the menu in CorelDRAW, select [Window]>[Color Palettes]>[Palettes].**
   The [**Palettes**] window appears.

6. **Click  under the drop-down list.**

7. **Select the "userinks.cpl" file that was pasted in Step 3, and click [Open].**

8. **Delete the "userinks.cpl" file that you pasted in Step 3.**

Step 2: Create Print Data with Illustration Software

The method for creating print data using white, gloss, primer, or metallic silver is the same as when using other spot colors.

Procedure

1. **Create print data that specifies the spot colors.**

   The color palette that is selected for each spot color is as shown below.

   - White: [**RDG_WHITE**]
   - Gloss:[**RDG_Gloss**]
   - Primer:[**RDG_PRIMER**]
   - Metallic silver: [**RDG_MetallicSilver**]

   MEMO

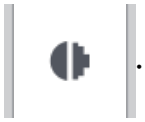
   The same color palette contains cut lines ([**CutContour**]) and perforated cut ([**PerfCutContour**]).

2. **Save the created data.**

Step 3: Perform Printing

Follow the procedure below to check that spot colors have been properly recognized, and then start printing.

Procedure

1. **Add the print data where the spot color was specified to the job list.**
   P. 61 Add Print Data to the Job List
2. **Select the file added to the job list.**
3. **Check that the spot color is displayed for [Document Information]>[Special Items] in the preview area.**
   - White: Wh
   - Gloss: Gl
   - Primer: Pr
   - Metallic silver: Mt
4. **Double-click the added file.**
   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.
5. **Click**  .
6. **Set the [Quality Settings]>[Mode].**
   The following is an example. [**Mode**] varies depending on the model. It may also be necessary to specify [**Media Type**].
   - White: [**White -> CMYK**], [**CMYK -> White**], etc.
   - Gloss: [**CMYK -> MatteVarnish**], [**GlossVarnish**], etc.
   - Primer: [**Primer -> CMYK**], etc.
   - Metallic silver: [**CMYKMt**], [**MetallicSilver**], etc.
7. **Configure the other settings necessary for printing.**
8. **Click [OK] to close the [Job Settings] window.**
9. 
   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

Using a Spot Color Library

Create and use an original spot color library in a named spot color library.

Example of use

1. Assign a spot color name to a color that has not been decided at the time of print data creation and create the data.
2. Create a spot color library and define the spot color name that was created in 1.
3. Add the print data to the job list.
4. Perform printing.

The spot color definition can be changed by creating multiple spot color libraries and selecting/deselecting the spot color library check box in the named spot color settings window.

There are three types of [**Color Type**] for created spot color libraries.

- [**Lab**]

  Specify a spot color using a Lab value. Specify by entering the value directly or by specifying the value measured by the measurement instrument. Select [**Assign Another Spot Color**] to specify any color in all spot color libraries, such as DIC and PANTONE.
- [**CMYK**]

  Specify a spot color using a CMYK value. Select [**Assign Another Spot Color**] to specify any color in the Roland Color System Library.
- [**Alias of Special Inks**]

  Converts a spot color to a white, gloss, primer, or metallic silver spot color ink.

Creating a Spot Color Library

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Spot Color Settings] on the menu bar.**

   The [**Spot Color Settings**] window appears.

2. **Click**  .

   The [**Create Spot Color Library**] window appears.

3. **Enter the desired name in [Spot Color Management].**

   MEMO

   The set library name cannot afterwards be changed.

4. **Select [Color Type].**

   - [**Lab**]
   - [**CMYK**]
   - [**Alias of Special Inks**]

   MEMO

   - When using a measurement instrument, be sure to set [**Color Type**] to [**Lab**].

- [**Color Type**] cannot afterwards be changed.

5. **Click [OK].**

A new spot color library is created.

6. **Select the newly created spot color library name and click ⊕.**

The new spot color is added to [**Spot Color Name**].

7. **Select a spot color that was added, and then enter the [Color Name].**

IMPORTANT

Be sure that the spot color name entered here and the spot color name in the illustration software are the same. If the names do not match, VersaWorks will not recognize them as spot colors. Names of spot colors are case-sensitive, so make sure the name is typed correctly.

8. **Specify a spot color for each [Color Type].**

- [**Lab**]
  - When measuring to decide the Lab value, refer to Setting the Measurement Instrument to Use(P. 37) and prepare the measurement instrument.
    a. Click [**Calibrate**]. The measurement instrument is calibrated.
    b. Click [**Measure**]. When the [**Start Measurement**] window appears, use the measurement instrument to perform the measurement. The Lab value is displayed when the measurement is finished.
  - When the Lab value is decided, select [**Define Output Values**] and enter the Lab value.
  - When specifying a spot color that is defined by the Lab value, such as DIC or PANTONE, select [**Assign Another Spot Color**] and click [**Select**] to specify the spot color.
- [**CMYK**]
  - When the CMYK value is decided, select [**Define Output Values**] and enter the CMYK value.
  - When specifying a spot color that is defined by the CMYK value, such as Roland Color System Library, select [**Assign Another Spot Color**] and click [**Select**] to specify the spot color.
- [**Alias of Special Inks**]

  When converting to a white, gloss, primer, or metallic silver spot color, specify the spot color from [**Special Ink**].
  - White: [**RDG_WHITE**]
  - Gloss: [**RDG_GLOSS**]
  - Primer: [**RDG_PRIMER**]
  - Metallic silver: [**RDG_MetallicSilver**]

9. **Click [OK] to close the [Spot Color Settings] window.**

The changed settings are saved.

IMPORTANT

Be sure to click [**OK**]. If you click [**Cancel**], a confirmation window appears to confirm that you want to discard the changes. If you click [**Yes**] in this confirmation window, the window is closed and no changes made to the settings or newly registered spot colors are saved.

Saving the Spot Color Library as a File

When using a created spot color library with VersaWorks on a different computer, or when separately managing spot color libraries that were created but are infrequently used, save the spot color library as a spot color file.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Spot Color Settings] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Spot Color Settings**] window appears.
2. **Select the library to be saved.**
3. **Click**  **.**
   The [**Save As**] window appears.
4. **Enter the file name, and then click [Save...].**
   The selected library is saved as a spot color file (.spot).

Importing a Saved Spot Color Library

Procedure

1. Click [Edit]>[Spot Color Settings] on the menu bar.
2. Click .
3. Select the saved spot color library (.spot) file and click [Open].
4. In the [Import Spot Color Library] window, click [OK].
   The spot color library is added to [**Library List**].

Deleting a Spot Color Library

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Spot Color Settings] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Spot Color Settings**] window appears.
2. **Select the library to be deleted.**
3. **Click**  **.**

   MEMO

   A spot color library that has the [**Preset**] attribute cannot be deleted.
4. **Click [OK].**

Replicating and Editing a Spot Color Library

You can add a new spot color to a spot color library or change the color value.

Replicate the spot library and change the spot color. You can also add a spot color to a created spot color library.

Here we replicate a spot library and edit the spot color.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Spot Color Settings] on the menu bar.**

   The [**Spot Color Settings**] window appears.

2. **Select the library to replicate and click**  **.**

   Editing is not possible when [**Attribute**] is not [**User Defined**]. When replicating a library where the [**Attribute**] is [**Preset**], [**Attribute**] changes to [**User Defined**]. For this reason, use this procedure to replicate the library before editing.

   A replicated spot color library is created. The spot color library name is the replicated original library name with (1) added to it. This library name cannot be changed.

3. **Select a spot color that was replicated, and then enter the [Spot Color Name] and color value.**

4. **Click [OK] to close the [Spot Color Settings] window.**

   IMPORTANT

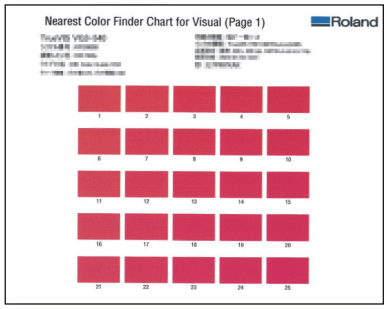
   Be sure to click [**OK**]. If you click [**Cancel**], a confirmation window appears to confirm that you want to discard the changes. If you click [**Yes**] in this confirmation window, the window is closed and no changes made to the settings are saved.

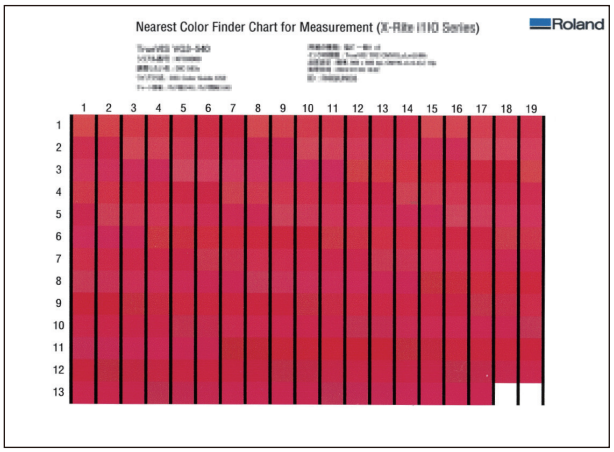
Adjusting the Output Color of a Spot Color: [Nearest Color Finder]

If the ink, media, or printer has been changed, the output color of the spot color may not be as intended.

Use [**Nearest Color Finder**] to adjust the output color of the spot color. The spot color to be adjusted can also be specified according to measurement color, spot color in the spot color library, or ink ratio.

First, print the chart of the colors nearest to the spot color used in the job or to the specified spot color. The chart can then be used to find the desired color and apply it to adjust the color to the intended output. There are charts for visualization (left) and charts for measurement (right).





The applied color can be registered in [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] and reused.

Step 1: Print the Spot Color Chart

Procedure

1. **Select the job to set.**

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Nearest Color Finder] window.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Nearest Color Finder**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Nearest Color Finder**] on the menu bar.

   The spot colors included in the job are displayed on the [**Start Nearest Color Finder**] window.

3. **Select the spot color to adjust and click [Start].**

   Up to 10 colors can be selected.

   MEMO

   Click [**Change Print Quality**] to change the [**Quality**] item of the job.

   The [**Nearest Color Finder**] window appears. When multiple spot colors are selected, the closest matching color is set for each tab.

4. **Select one of the following for the color being adjusted.**
   - Leave [**Specify Color to Match**] unchecked and proceed to Step 5 if you do not want to specify a color to adjust.
   - Proceed to the next operation if you want to specify a color to adjust.
     a. Select the [**Specify Color to Match**] check box.

b. Select the method for specifying the color.
   - [**Measure**]: Specify using a measurement instrument or by inputting the Lab value.
   - [**Library**]: Specify a spot color in a separate spot color library registered in VersaWorks.
   - [**Ink**]: Specify the color value.

5. **Specify the [Chart Format].**
- [**Align for Visualization**]: Prints a chart with the swatches optimally arranged for visual comparison.
- [**Align for Measurement**]: Prints a chart that can be measured by a measurement instrument for color charts.

6. **Specify the [Chart Settings].**
- Select [**Swatch Amount**] from the following.
  - [**Many**]: 7 swatches × 7 swatches × 5 pages = 245 swatches
  - [**Standard**]: 5 swatches × 5 swatches × 5 pages = 125 swatches
  - [**Few**]: 3 swatches × 3 swatches × 3 pages = 27 swatches

  MEMO

  When [**Align for Measurement**] is selected, [**Standard**] will be selected.
- Select [**Swatch Interval**] from the following.
  - [**Large**]
  - [**Standard**]
  - [**Small**]

7. **Click [Print].**

The [**Print Chart**] confirmation window is displayed. Click OK to print the numbered nearest colors chart. When printing is finished, a chart matching the nearest colors chart that was printed is displayed on the [**Nearest Color Finder**] window.

8. **If multiple spot colors are selected, switch tabs and perform Steps 4 to 7 again to print charts for all of the selected spot colors.**

Step 2: Select and Apply the Desired Color

When Printing [Align for Visualization] Charts

Procedure

1. **View the nearest colors chart on each tab to check whether it contains the desired color.**

   If it does not, change the settings, and then print the chart again. You can also select a swatch and click [**Print Chart Again**] to print the chart centered on that swatch.

2. **In the [Nearest Color Finder] window, select the desired color.**

   To do so, select the number on the chart with [**Swatch Number**] or select the swatch with the corresponding number on the chart window.

3. **Click [Save to Library].**

   The selected color is applied to the selected spot color on the tab in the [**Start Nearest Color Finder**] window. However, it will not be applied to jobs with a different [**Quality**] setting.

4. **Specify the color on all tabs.**

5. **To close the [Nearest Color Finder] window, click [Exit].**

This completes the nearest color finder settings. Output a job and check that the set spot color is output as intended.

When Printing [Align for Measurement] Charts

Procedure

1. **Connect the measurement instrument.**

   Use the measurement instrument specified in [**Preferences**]>[**For Spot and Special Colors**] on the menu bar.

2. **Click [Select with Measurement Instrument] and measure the chart.**

   An asterisk will be displayed for the swatch with the color closest to the color being adjusted.

3. **Click [Save to Library].**

   The selected color is applied to the selected spot color on the relevant tab of the [**Start Nearest Color Finder**] window. However, it will not be applied to jobs with a different [**Quality**] setting.

4. **Specify the color on all tabs.**

5. **To close the [Nearest Color Finder] window, click [Exit].**

This completes the nearest color finder settings. Output a job and check that the set spot color is output as intended.

Managing the [Nearest Color Finder Library]

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Nearest Color Finder Library] on the menu bar.**

   The [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] window opens with all results saved in the past displayed.

2. **Check the [Nearest Color Finder Library].**

   The following items are listed. Select a result to display items such as the [**Nickname**] and [**Creation Date**] on the right, displaying the environment information when the result was saved in the library.

   - [**Color Name**]
   - [**Model Name**]
   - [**Serial Number**]
   - [**Ink Type**]
   - [**Media Name**]
   - [**Print Quality**]
   - [**Resolution**]
   - [**Mode**]
   - [**Printer Profile**]

   MEMO

   Unless all the above nine items have the same values as the printer setting parameters, the corresponding library cannot be used.

3. **Click**  .

   The filtering window appears.

4. **Select one of the following conditions for filtering.**

   - [**Color Name**]: Select from a list or search by inputting text.
   - [**Model Name**] or [**Serial Number**]: Select from a list.
   - [**Media Name**]: Select from a list or search by inputting text.

5. **Select an unnecessary result and click**  .

Readjusting the Adjustment Results in [Nearest Color Finder Library]

This section explains how to readjust colors for adjusted results.

Procedure

1. **Select the adjustment results to readjust.**
   P. 251 Managing the [Nearest Color Finder Library]
2. **Click**  **.**
3. **The [Do you want to readjust the selected data?] window appears. Click [Yes].**
4. **Follow the instructions on the [Nearest Color Finder] window to perform adjustment again.**
   For instructions on how to perform adjustment, refer to Step 1: Print the Spot Color Chart(P. 248).

Using [Nearest Color Finder Library] in Other Computers

Color adjustment results from a library with the closest matching colors can be used with other computers, such as when changing computers or when multiple computers use the same printer.

Procedure

1. **From the computer where the color adjustment results are saved, click [Edit]>[Nearest Color Finder Library] on the menu bar.**

   All previous color adjustment results are displayed.

2. **Click**  .

3. **Specify the folder to use as the download location.**

   All adjustment results in the library will be downloaded. The adjustment results data will be saved as a JSON file.

4. **Save the downloaded data on the computer being used.**

5. **Start VersaWorks and click [Edit]>[Nearest Color Finder Library] on the menu bar.**

6. **Click**  .

7. **Specify the folder where the data was saved in Step 4 to import the data.**

   If there is already data in the library, select one of the following.

   - [**Overwrite**]: Import by overwriting with the new adjustment results.
   - [**Skip**]: Do not import adjustment results with the same conditions.
   - [**Cancel**]: Cancel importing of all adjustment results.

Other Spot Color Functions

Replacing or Fine-tuning the Output Color of a Spot Color

The color of a named spot color can be freely replaced or fine-tuned. The recommended methods for adjusting a spot color to match the desired color are using [**Nearest Color Finder**] and finding the desired color from a color chart output from the printer.

- Adjusting the Output Color of a Spot Color: [**Nearest Color Finder**](P. 248)
- Printing Using the Roland Color System Library(P. 230)

However when replacing a spot color with a color from a different spot color library, or when making fine adjustments to the color value of a process color, use these methods to change the spot color.

This is a setting that is configured for a specific job. To apply the setting to all subsequently added jobs, configure the settings according to Assigning a Color from Another Spot Color Library to a Newly Created Spot Color Library(P. 256).

Procedure

1. **In the job list, double-click the job.**
   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

2. **Click**  .

3. **Click [Details] under [Spot Color Settings].**
   The [**Spot Color List**] appears.
   You can check the following information:

[**Spot Color Name**]	Spot color name used in the job
[**Library Name**]	Name of the library that the spot color is registered in
[**Library Output**]	Color values defined in the library **MEMO** If the spot color is one where the color type is defined in the Lab color space, a caution mark (⚠) is displayed when this color cannot be reproduced (it is out of the gamut) with the selected media and quality.
[**Delta E**]	Color difference values from the reproducible range of colors*1
[**Printer Output**]	Process color values to which the spot color has been converted **MEMO** If the spot color is one with a color type defined in the Lab color space, the values converted with the method displayed in the [**Matching Method**] field on the right are displayed.
[**Matching Method**]	[**Matching Method**] under [**File Format**]*2
[**Output**]	Color value displayed in [**Edit Output Color**]

*1 Only when the library output color is out of the gamut
*2 Only when the spot color is one defined in the Lab color space

4. **Use [Edit Output Color] to change the output color.**

- **[Use Spot Color Library]**

  Select the check box, then click [**Select**] and specify the color for replacement.
- **Specifying the CMYK value directly**

  Change the CMYK value.
- **Changing [Matching Method]**

  The matching method can be changed for a spot color that is defined in the Lab color space. The CMYK values change depending on the selected method.

MEMO

Make adjustments while checking the output result each time you change the color values.

5. **To close the [Spot Color List] window, click [OK].**

IMPORTANT

The converted spot colors are not applied to the preview area in [**Job Settings**] and the main screen.

6. **To close the [Job Settings] window, click [OK].**

7. **Click**  **.**

Processing by the RIP and printing start.

Assigning a Color from Another Spot Color Library to a Newly Created Spot Color Library

You can create spot colors in newly created libraries and assign colors in existing spot color libraries. The procedure for replacing the color of a named spot color is the same as Replacing or Fine-tuning the Output Color of a Spot Color(P. 254), but if you configure the settings in this section, they will be applied to all print data added in the future.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Spot Color Settings] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Spot Color Settings**] window appears.

2. **Click**  .

   IMPORTANT
   The converted spot colors are not applied to the preview area in [**Job Settings**] and the main screen.

   The [**Create Spot Color Library**] window appears.

3. **Enter the desired name in [Spot Color Management].**

4. **Select [Color Type].**
   The spot colors that can be assigned are determined by the color space selected here.
   - [**Lab**]
     You can assign them to colors of libraries where the color type is Lab, such as DIC or PANTONE.
   - [**CMYK**]
     You can assign them to colors of libraries where the color type is CMYK, such as Roland Color System Library.
   - [**Alias of Special Inks**]
     You can assign them to [**RDG_WHITE**], [**RDG_Gloss**], [**RDG_MetallicSilver**], or [**RDG_PRIMER**].

5. **Click [OK].**
   A new spot color library is created.

6. **Select the newly created spot color library name and click** ⊕ **.**
   The list is added to [**Spot Color Name**].

7. **Select a spot color that was added, and then enter the [Color Name].**

8. **Select [Assign Another Spot Color].**

9. **Click [Select].**
   The [**Select Spot Color**] window appears.

10. **Select [Spot Color Management].**

11. **Select the spot color name to be assigned, and then click [OK].**

12. **Click [OK].**

The [**Spot Color Settings**] window closes and the settings are saved.

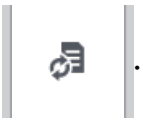
Assigning White/Metallic Silver/Gloss/Primer to a Spot Color in Existing Print Data

Even when white ink, metallic silver ink, gloss ink, or primer is specified with a spot color name in existing print data, it cannot be recognized as a spot color if the spot color name is not the spot color name designated by Roland DG Corporation. In this case, create a new spot color library and assign the white ink, metallic silver ink, gloss ink, or primer to these spot color names.

For example, even in the case below, spot colors can be specified correctly even without making new print data.

- The print data creator assigned original names.
- Print data created for use with RIP software other than VersaWorks is used.

Procedure

1. **Select the print data where the spot color is specified from the job list and double-click it.**
2. **Click**  .
3. **Make a note of the spot color name that is displayed in [Color Name] under [Spot Color Settings].**
   Be sure to note the spot color name accurately.
4. **Click [OK].**
5. **Click [Edit]>[Spot Color Settings] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Spot Color Settings**] window appears.
6. **Click**  .
   The [**Create Spot Color Library**] window appears.
7. **Enter the desired name in [Spot Color Management].**
8. **Select the [Alias of Special Inks] check box.**
9. **Click [OK].**
   A new spot color library is created.
10. **Select the newly created spot color library name and click** ⊕ .
    The list is added to [**Spot Color Name**].
11. **Enter the spot color name that was noted in Step 3 into [Color Name].**
12. **Select the ink to apply from [Special Ink].**
    Select from [**RDG_WHITE**], [**RDG_GLOSS**], [**RDG_MetallicSilver**], or [**RDG_PRIMER**].
13. **Click [OK].**
    The [**Spot Color Settings**] window closes and the settings are saved.

MEMO

To print using the set [**Special Ink**], add the print data to the job list again.

Importing Spot Colors and Creating a Spot Color Library

Import spot colors from print data and create a spot color library. Output colors can be assigned to the imported spot colors.

When output colors are assigned to spot colors here, they will be applied to all subsequent jobs. To apply only to that print data, configure the settings in Replacing or Fine-tuning the Output Color of a Spot Color(P. 254).

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Spot Color Settings] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Spot Color Settings**] window appears.

2. **Click**  .
   The [**Create Spot Color Library**] window appears.

3. **Enter the desired name in [Spot Color Management].**

4. **Select [Color Type].**
   The spot colors that can be assigned are determined by the color space selected here.
   - [**Lab**]
     You can assign them to colors of libraries where the color type is Lab, such as DIC or PANTONE.
   - [**CMYK**]
     You can assign them to colors of libraries where the color type is CMYK, such as Roland Color System Library.
   - [**Alias of Special Inks**]
     You can assign them to [**RDG_WHITE**], [**RDG_Gloss**], [**RDG_MetallicSilver**], or [**RDG_PRIMER**].

5. **Click [OK].**
   A new spot color library is created.

6. **Select the name of the newly created spot color library, and then click**  .
   The [**Open**] window for selecting the file appears.

7. **Select the print data that contains the spot colors to import, then click [Open].**
   After the spot color is imported, the [**Import Spot Color**] window appears.

8. **Select the spot color to import and click [OK].**
   The spot color is imported, and then you are returned to the [**Spot Color Settings**] window. The list is added to [**Spot Color Name**].

9. **As necessary, configure the following settings.**
   - Select a spot color that was added, and then enter the [**Spot Color Name**].
   - Set the color value with [**Define Output Values**] or [**Assign Another Spot Color**].

10. **Click [OK].**
    The [**Spot Color Settings**] window closes and the settings are saved.

Generation of Spot Color Plates (White, Gloss, Primer)

Generate spot color plates using VersaWorks or Job Assistant. As shown below, each program offers specific characteristics for generating spot color plates. Use whichever method best suits your application.

VersaWorks	Job Assistant
• Uses vector images for all target data. • White, gloss, and primer spot colors that can be generated*1 • Can be applied to Queue Properties (data-specific omission of settings) • [Entire Image] or [Outside Print Area] selectable in addition to [Print Area]	• PDF format used for target data • White, gloss, and primer spot colors can be generated • Creation of individual objects • Object resizing according to reference object • Can be used as spot color print data

*1 Only spot color plates not used in the print data can be generated in VersaWorks.

Special Color Plate Generation with VersaWorks

This section explains how to use VersaWorks to generate white, gloss, and primer spot color plates.

Step 1: Checking the Conditions That Permit Spot Color Plate Generation

First check the conditions that permit spot color plate generation. If a spot color is set on the print data, that spot color cannot be generated in VersaWorks.

Procedure

1. **Select the job from the job list.**

2. **Check the [Special Items] in the preview area.**

   Check whether spot colors have been set on the print data.

   - A A: Cutting line, Perforated cutting line
   - Wh: White plate
   - Gl: Gloss plate
   - Mt: Metallic silver plate
   - Pr: Primer plate

   MEMO

   You can set spot color plates that do not exist in the print data, but you cannot generate spot color plates for the following types of data:

   - Vector data for which an arbitrary spot color name has been assigned to each white ink/metallic silver ink/gloss ink/primer
     P. 261 Checking the Conditions That Permit Spot Color Plate Generation
   - Raster data
   - Variable field in a template file for variable data printing
     P. 201 Create a Template

Step 2: Generating Spot Color Plates

Step 2: Generating Spot Color Plates

Generate spot color plates. When you generate two spot colors, you can configure different settings on each spot color plate such as by changing the generated pattern or the density between the primer plate and the white plate.

Procedure

1. **In the job list, double-click the job.**
   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.
2. **Click**  **.**
3. **Use [Quality Settings] and select a mode that includes spot colors.**
4. **Click**  **.**
5. **Select the spot color to generate with [Special Color] under [Special Color Plate Generation].**
   When a mode containing two spot colors is selected, use the pull-down menu to select the spot color and configure its settings.
6. **Select the [Generate Special Color Plate] check box.**
   [Generated Pattern]
   - The generated spot color plate is displayed in the [**Job Settings**] window (white plate: pink, gloss plate: light blue, primer plate: green). You cannot generate a plate only for a specific object.

   Print data



Generated pattern	Image of the spot color plate to generate	[Job Settings] window
[Print Area]	The plate is generated below the objects. 	

Generated pattern	Image of the spot color plate to generate	[Job Settings] window
[Outside Print Area]	The plate is generated in a location where no objects are present. 	
[Entire Image]	The plate is generated for the entire job size. 	

7. **Specify the [Density].**

8. **If you selected a mode containing two spot colors in Step 3, use the pull-down menu to select the remaining spot color.**

9. **Perform Steps 6 and 7 to set the remaining spot color plate.**

10. **Click [OK] to close the [Job Settings] window.**

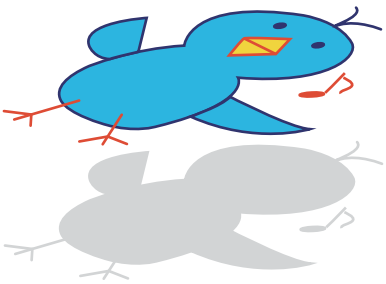
    This completes the spot color plate setup.

Spot Color Plate Generation with Job Assistant

This section explains how to use Job Assistant to generate spot color plates (white, gloss, and primer).

Creating Spot Color Objects for Print Data

Create spot color objects based on shapes included in the print data.



MEMO

To use Job Assistant, it must be installed on a PC.

Procedure

1. **Select the job to which to add the spot color from the job list.**

   MEMO

   Spot color objects can only be created for PDF-format jobs.

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Job Assistant] window.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Job Assistant**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Job Assistant**] on the menu bar.

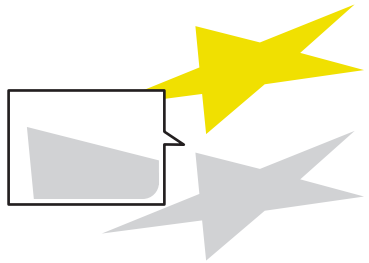
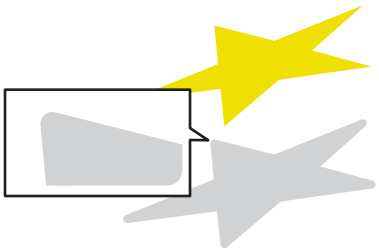
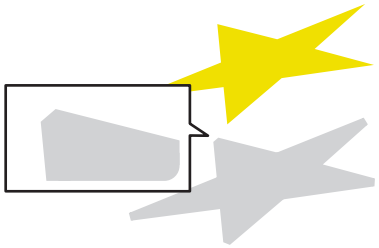
3. **[Spot Color] tab: Click**  .

4. **Click the shape to be the basis of the spot color plate in the preview area.**
   You can select multiple shapes by holding down the shift key while clicking.

5. **Select [Create Spot Color Object] under [Editing Method].**

6. **Select the spot color to be created from [Type of Spot Color].**

7. **Select the following conditions for [Create Spot Color Object].**

[Corner Shape]	[Miter]: Creates a spot color object that maintains the corner shape. However when [Miter Limit] is on, then depending on the angle, a spot color object with chamfered corners may be created in the same way as [Bevel].	
	[Round]: Creates a spot color object that rounds the corners.	
	[Bevel]: Creates a spot color object that chamfers the corners.	
[Miter Limit] Enabled only when [Miter] is selected for [Corner Shape].	OFF: Creates a spot color object that maintains the corner regardless of the angle.	
	ON: According to the [Angle] setting, a spot color object with chamfered corners is created in the same way as [Bevel].	
[Angle] Enabled when [Miter Limit] is on and [offset] is set to +.	Use the slider to set the [Angle] to be chamfered. For example, the more you set the angle to the [Large] direction, the wider will be the angle at which chamfering is performed.	—
[offset]	Sets the distance from the outline of the selected shape at which to create the spot color object.	

8. **Click [Create] .**

9. **Click [OK] .**

10. **In the confirmation window, click [Yes].**

The [Job Assistant] window closes. It will be added to the job list as a new job.

Creating Spot Color Objects in the Shape You Want

If it is a simple shape like an ellipse or a rectangle, it can be added as a spot color object.

MEMO

To use Job Assistant, it must be installed on a PC.

Procedure

1. **Select the job to which to add the spot color from the job list.**

   MEMO

   Spot color objects can only be created for PDF-format jobs.

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Job Assistant] window.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Job Assistant**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Job Assistant**] on the menu bar.

3. **[Spot Color] tab: Click**  .

4. **Select**  **[Draw Spot Color Object] under [Editing Method].**

5. **Select the spot color to be created from [Type of Spot Color].**

6. **Select the shape of the object.**
   -  : Ellipse
   - : Rectangle

7. **Click [Draw].**
   The object for the selected shape is displayed.

8. **Select an object and use the mouse to match the size and position to the print data.**

9. **Click [OK].**

10. **In the confirmation window, click [Yes].**
    The [Job Assistant] window closes. It will be added to the job list as a new job.

Replacing Print Data Shapes with Spot Color Objects

Some shapes in the print data can be converted to a spot color object.

MEMO

To use Job Assistant, it must be installed on a PC.

Procedure

1. **Select the job to which to add the spot color from the job list.**

   MEMO

   Spot color objects can only be created for PDF-format jobs.

2. **Use one of the methods below to open the [Job Assistant] window.**
   - Right-click the selected job, and then click [**Job Assistant**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Job Assistant**] on the menu bar.

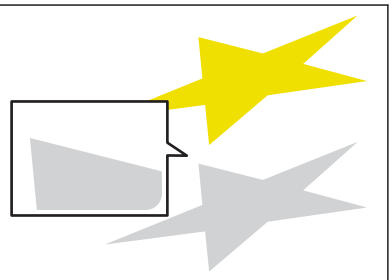
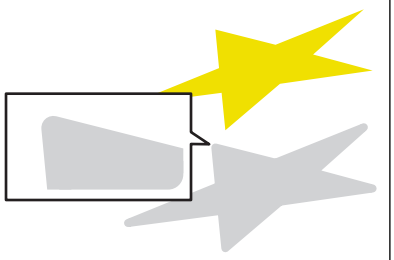
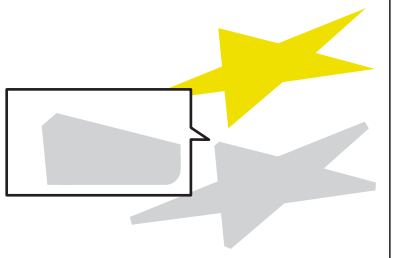
3. **[Spot Color] tab: Click**  .

4. **Select**  **[Replace with Spot Color Object] under [Editing Method].**

5. **Select the spot color to be created from [Type of Spot Color].**

6. **Click an object to be replaced.**
   You can select multiple shapes by holding down the shift key while clicking.

7. **Select the following conditions for [Create Spot Color Object].**

[Corner Shape]	[Miter]: Creates a spot color object that maintains the corner shape. However when [Miter Limit] is on, then depending on the angle, a spot color object with chamfered corners may be created in the same way as [Bevel].	
	[Round]: Creates a spot color object that rounds the corners.	
	[Bevel]: Creates a spot color object that chamfers the corners.	
[Miter Limit] Enabled only when [Miter] is selected for [Corner Shape].	OFF: Creates a spot color object that maintains the corner regardless of the angle.	
	ON: According to the [Angle] setting, a spot color object with chamfered corners is created in the same way as [Bevel].	
[Angle] Enabled when [Miter Limit] is on and [offset] is set to +.	Use the slider to set the [Angle] to be chamfered. For example, the more you set the angle to the [Large] direction, the wider will be the angle at which chamfering is performed.	–
[offset]	Sets the distance from the outline of the selected shape at which to create the spot color object.	

8. **Click [Create] .**

9. **Click [OK] .**

10. **In the confirmation window, click [Yes].**

The [Job Assistant] window closes. It will be added to the job list as a new job.

Adjusting the Position and Size of Spot Color Plates

Even when the size in the print data is the same, with actual printing contraction of the media, printer tolerances, and other factors may result in misalignment of the spot color plates (white, primer, gloss, etc.). Misalignment of white is particularly noticeable.

When spot color plate misalignment occurs, correct the misalignment by making fine adjustments to the positions or by expanding/reducing the sizes. Print a test pattern in order to decide the correction values.

Depending on the printer, this function may not be displayed.

- **Example 1**

  The white plate is displaced to the lower right. Use [**Position Correction**] to eliminate the misalignment.



- **Example 2**

  The white plate is printed too large. Use [**Size Correction**] to eliminate the misalignment.



Correcting the Position of Spot Color Plates

Correct the position of an image printed using spot color ink.

Depending on the printer, this function may not be displayed.

Procedure

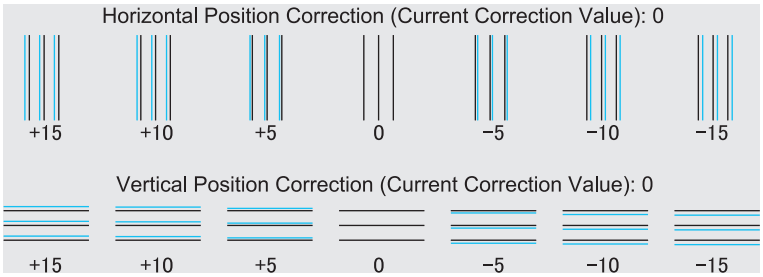
1. **Double-click on the job with the misaligned spot color plate to open [Job Settings].**
2. **Click**  **.**
3. **Use [Mode] under [Quality Settings] to select the mode including the spot color.**
4. **Click**  **.**
5. **Use the Spot Color list under [Special Color Plate Correction] to select the spot color ink to correct.**
6. **Click [Test Print] under [Position Correction].**

   The [**Test Print**] dialog box appears.
7. **Select [Pattern Settings].**

The test pattern has three stages in the plus direction and minus direction from 0 (no correction) in both the scan direction and feed direction. The stages consist of simplified stages that are coarse with units of 5, and detail stages that are fine with units of 1. The following test patterns are expressed using a blue spot color.

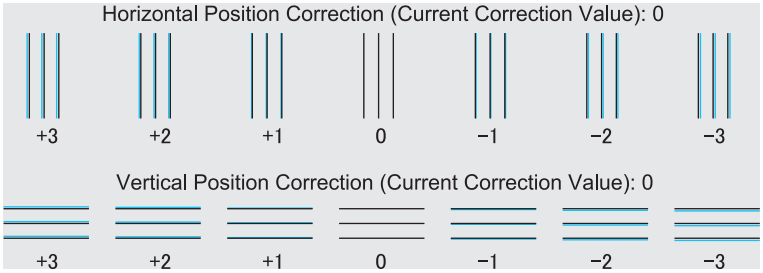
- **[Simple (5)]**

  Select this when misalignment is large (when making rough adjustments to the position misalignment).



- **[Detailed (1)]**

  Select this when misalignment is small (when making detailed adjustments to the position misalignment).

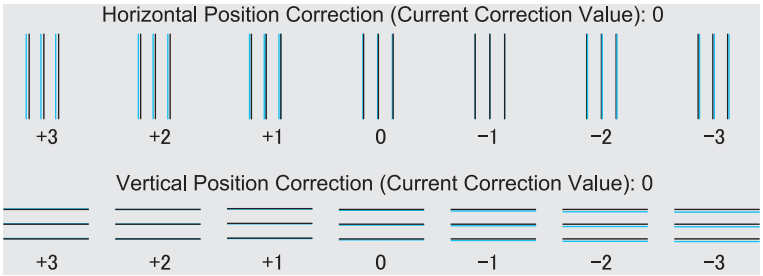


8. **Click [OK].**

A test pattern is printed.

9. **Enter the [Horizontal] and [Vertical] correction values.**

Select the value on the printed test pattern that makes the misalignment between the black line and the spot color line the smallest. Enter the **[Horizontal]** and **[Vertical]** correction values written in the test pattern.



IMPORTANT

The test pattern correction values differ for each job. Set the default values for each job.

10. **Click [OK] to close the [Job Settings] window.**

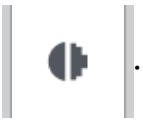
When size correction is also necessary, next perform size correction.

Correcting the Size of Spot Color Plates

Correct the size of an image printed using spot color ink.

Depending on the printer, this function may not be displayed.

Procedure

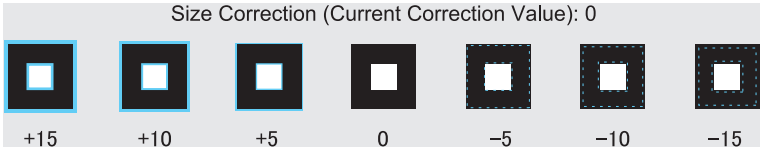
1. **Double-click on the job with the misaligned spot color plate to open [Job Settings].**
2. **Click**  **.**
3. **Use [Mode] under [Quality Settings] to select the mode including the spot color.**
4. **Click**  **.**
5. **Use the [Spot Color] list under [Special Color Plate Correction] to select the spot color ink to correct.**
6. **Click [Test Print] under [Size Correction].**

   The [**Test Print**] dialog box appears.
7. **Select [Pattern Settings].**

   The stages consist of simplified stages that are coarse with units of 5, and detail stages that are fine with units of 1. The following test patterns are expressed using a blue spot color.

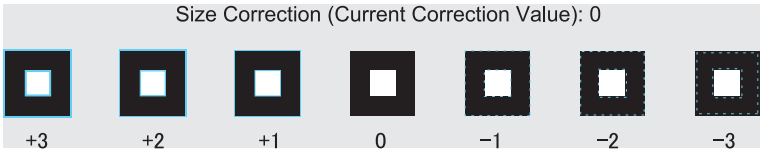
   - **[Simple (5)]**

     Select this when size difference is large (when making rough adjustments to the size).

   - **[Detailed (1)]**

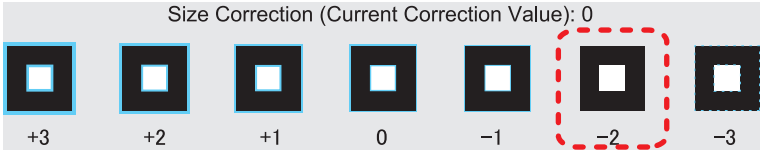
     Select this when size difference is small (when making fine adjustments to the size).

8. **Click [OK].**

   A test pattern is printed.
9. **Enter the [Size] correction value.**

   Select the value on the printed test pattern that makes the size difference between the black frame and the spot color frame the smallest. Enter the [**Size Correction**] value written on the test pattern.



IMPORTANT

The test pattern correction values differ for each job. Set the default values for each job.

10. **Click [OK] to close the [Job Settings] window.**

Using Special Colors

About Special Colors 274
Printing with Special Colors 275
Step 1: Configure a Special Color 275
Step 2: Performing Printing 277
Saving the Special Color Library as a File 278
Replicating and Editing the Special Color Library 279
Deleting a Special Color Library 280
Registering a Color by Measuring with an Instrument 281
Fine-tuning the Output Color of a Special Color 282

About Special Colors

Special colors are special colors that are used in VersaWorks and are different from the spot colors that are widely used in the printing industry. While spot colors are recognized based on the color name (such as RVW-BK01A or PANTONE Yellow 012C), special colors are recognized based on the color value (such as C: 10, M: 20, Y: 30, K: 0, L: 50, a: 60, and b: 70). VersaWorks detects the specific colors in a job by color value (RGB or CMYK) and replaces them with color values defined in VersaWorks (CMYK or Lab).

IMPORTANT

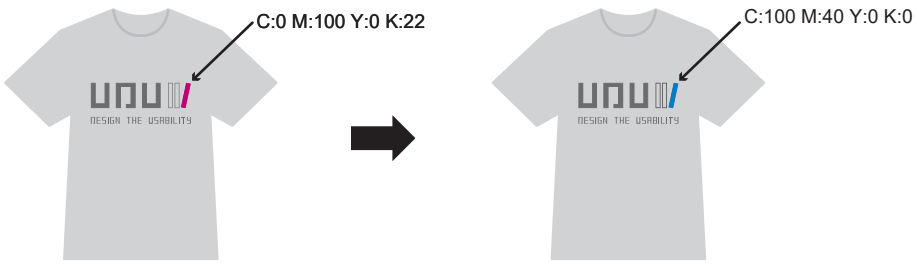
When a special color is set, it will be applied to all subsequently added print data. For this reason, there is the possibility of unintended color replacement.

MEMO

VersaWorks can only recognize special colors in vector data. Colors used in raster data such as bitmap images cannot be recognized.

Printing with Special Colors

To use special colors in VersaWorks, first you must register a color (input color: RGB or CMYK) that you want to use as a special color and the color (output color: CMYK or Lab) after replacement in [**Special Color Settings**]. Then check the special color from [**File Format**]>[**Special Color Settings**] and perform printing.



MEMO

When the special color function is used, it is possible to convert the input color to a CMYK value or Lab value, however when the output color after replacement is CMYK, it will not be the target for color matching.

P. 132 Characteristics of Each Matching Method

When printing a color (C: 0, M: 100, Y: 100, K: 0) through the regular workflow, color matching is performed and the ink used may not be exactly (C: 0, M: 100, Y: 100, K: 0). However when replacement with special colors is performed, the output colors are not targeted for color matching and printing will be performed using the specified CMYK values.

Step 1: Configure a Special Color

Make a note of the colors (RGB or CMYK) in the print data in advance. Then register the colors (CMYK or Lab) after replacement.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Special Color Settings] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Special Color Settings**] window appears.
2. **Click** .
   The [**Create New Special Color Library**] window appears.
3. **Enter the desired name in [Special Color Library Name].**
4. **Click [OK].**
   A new special color library is created.
5. **Select the name of the newly created special color library, and then click** .
   The input colors and output colors are displayed.
6. **Click under [Input Color] to select CMYK as the color space.**
7. **Set the CMYK values.**
   Here, set the values to (C: 0, M: 100, Y: 100, K: 0).

8. Click  or  under [Output Color] to select the color space.

9. Set the color values.

10. Click [OK].

The settings are saved.

IMPORTANT

- Be sure to click **[OK]**. If you click **[Cancel]**, a confirmation window appears to confirm that you want to discard the changes. If you click [**Yes**] in this confirmation window, the window is closed and no changes made to the settings are saved.
- As in this example, if you configure the output color as CMYK values, the color will be printed according to the density curve configured in the [**Media Explorer**] window (and not with the [**Matching Method**] setting). This method is useful in situations such as when you want to print a specific color without any impurities. But in this case, the ink limit does not apply. Be cautious of excessive ink usage when printing.

MEMO

You can save the special colors displayed in the [**Special Color Settings**] window to a file.

P. 278 Saving the Special Color Library as a File

Step 2: Performing Printing

Step 2: Performing Printing

Check that the special color was recognized correctly, then perform printing.

Procedure

1. **Add print data that contains the special color to the job list.**

   P. 61 Add Print Data to the Job List

2. **Double-click the target file in the job list.**

   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

3. **Click**  **.**

4. **Select the [Convert Special Color (Value Specified Color)] check box.**

[**Input Color**]	The special color used with the job is displayed. MEMO If the output color is a special color defined in the Lab color space, a caution mark (⚠) is displayed when the output color cannot be reproduced (it is out of the gamut) with the selected media and quality.
[**Output Color**]	Displays the process color values to which the special color has been converted.

   Click [**Details**] to display the [**Special Color List**] window.

5. **Configure the media settings and other such settings necessary for printing.**

6. **Click [OK].**

7. **Click**  **.**

   Processing by the RIP and printing are performed.

MEMO

- For special colors whose output colors are defined in the Lab color space, select the color matching method from the [**Matching Method**] list. Color matching is performed according to this setting. (The [**Color Settings**]>[**Advanced**]>[**Matching Method**] setting under [**Quality**] will be ignored.)
- You can also enable [**Convert Special Color (Value Specified Color)**] by clicking  in the [**Queue Properties**] window. In this case, special color conversion will be performed even if you do not enable this function in the [**Job Settings**] window.

Saving the Special Color Library as a File

When using a created special color library with VersaWorks on a different computer, or when separately managing special color libraries that were created but are infrequently used, save the special color library as a special color file.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Special Color Settings] on the menu bar.**

   The [**Special Color Settings**] window appears.

2. **Select the name of the special color library to be saved, and then click**  **.**

   The [**Save As**] window appears.

3. **Enter the file name, and then click [Save...].**

   The selected library is saved as a special color file (.spec).

   MEMO

   You can click  to open saved special color files.

Replicating and Editing the Special Color Library

New special colors can be added to a created special color library, and the color values can be changed.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Special Color Settings] on the menu bar.**

   The [**Special Color Settings**] window appears.

2. **Select the library to edit.**

3. **Select the special color in the library and click** .

   A replicated special color library is created. The special color library name is the replicated original library name with (1) added to it. This library name cannot be changed.

4. **Select a replicated special color and then enter [Input Color] and [Output Color].**

5. **Click [OK] .**

IMPORTANT

Be sure to click [**OK**]. If you click [**Cancel**], a confirmation window appears to confirm that you want to discard the changes. If you click [**Yes**] in this confirmation window, the window is closed and no changes made to the settings are saved.

Deleting a Special Color Library

Procedure

1. Click [Edit]>[Special Color Settings] on the menu bar.
   The [**Special Color Settings**] window appears.
2. Select the special color library that you want to delete.
3. Click  .
4. Click [OK].

Registering a Color by Measuring with an Instrument

Register the Lab value of a color measured with a measurement instrument as the output color of a special color in cases such as when you have a printing sample. This assumes that an input color already exists.

Procedure

1. **Connect the measurement instrument.**
   Use the measurement instrument specified in [**For Spot and Special Colors**] on the [**Measurement Instrument**] tab from [**Edit**]>[**Preferences**] on the menu bar.
2. **Click [Edit]>[Special Color Settings] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Special Color Settings**] window appears.
3. **Click**  .
   The [**Create New Special Color Library**] window appears.
4. **Enter the desired name in [Special Color Library Name].**
5. **Click [OK].**
   A new special color library is created.
6. **Select the name of the newly created special color library.**
7. **Click**  .
   The input colors and output colors are displayed.
8. **Under [Input Color], click**  **(RGB) or**  **(CMYK) to specify the color space of the input color, and then enter the color values.**
9. **For Output Color, click**  **(Lab).**
10. **Prepare to calibrate the measurement instrument, then click [Calibrate].**
    The calibration of the measurement instrument starts.
11. **When the calibration of the measurement instrument finishes, click [Measure].**
    The [**Start Measurement**] window appears.
12. **Use the measurement instrument to perform the measurement.**
    The Lab value is displayed when the measurement is finished.
13. **Click [OK].**

> **IMPORTANT**
> Be sure to click [**OK**]. If you click [**Cancel**], a confirmation window appears to confirm that you want to discard the changes. If you click [**Yes**] in this confirmation window, the window is closed and no changes made to the settings are saved.

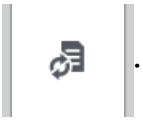
Fine-tuning the Output Color of a Special Color

When the color that is actually output is slightly different than the color that was measured, fine-tune the output color of the special color.

Procedure

1. **In the job list, double-click the job.**

   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

2. **Click**  .

3. **Click [Details] under [Special Color Settings].**

   The [**Special Color List**] appears.

   You can check the following information:

[**Input Color**]	RGB or CMYK values of the defined special color
[**Spot Color Management**]	Name of the library that the special color is registered in
[**Library Output**]	Color values defined in the library **MEMO** If the output color is a special color defined in the Lab color space, a caution mark (⚠) is displayed when the output color cannot be reproduced (it is out of the gamut) with the selected media and quality.
[**Delta E**]	Color difference values from the reproducible range of colors*1
[**Printer Output**]	Process color values to which the special color has been converted **MEMO** If the output color is a special color defined in the Lab color space, the values converted with the method displayed in the [**Matching Method**] field on the right are displayed.
[**Matching Method**]	[**Matching Method**] under [**File Format**]*2

   *1 Only when the library output color is out of the gamut

   *2 Only when the output color is a special color defined in the Lab color space

4. **Use [Edit Output Color] to change the output color.**

   - **Specifying the CMYK value directly**

     Change the CMYK value.

   - **Changing [Matching Method]**

     Right-click the [**Matching Method**] field of the color to be adjusted, and then select the matching method. However, this change is only available when the spot color is one defined in the Lab color space.

   - **[Use Spot Color Library]**

     Select the check box, then click [**Select**] and specify the color for replacement.

MEMO

Make adjustments while checking the output result each time you change the color values.

5. **To close the [Special Color List] window, click [OK].**

6. **To close the [Job Settings] window, click [OK].**

7. **Click**  **.**

   Processing by the RIP and printing start.

Cutting Settings

Creating the Cutting Data

Creating with Illustration Software 286
Adobe Illustrator 286
CorelDRAW 288
Creating with Job Assistant 290
Create a Cutting Line From Shapes Included in the Print Data 290
Create a Cutting Line in an Ellipse or Rectangular Shape 294
Replacing Shapes Contained in Print Data with Cutting Lines 296
Editing Cutting Lines 299
Changing the Color of the Cutting Line 303

Creating with Illustration Software

Use a printer equipped with a cutting function to print an image on media that has an adhesive layer, and then cut around the image[*1] to create a seal, sticker, or similar item.





To perform cutting, it is necessary to use the illustration software (Adobe Illustrator or other) and create cutting data.

There are two types of cutting: perforated cut which adds cuts at regular intervals, and cutting which cuts to a fixed depth.

This section explains how to create cutting data using Adobe Illustrator and CorelDRAW, which are typical pieces of illustration software. However, this section assumes that you are already familiar with the basic operations of each illustration software.

Adobe Illustrator

Use Adobe Illustrator and create cutting data.

Registering the Cutting Line Spot Color

Procedure

1. **On the RIP server (the computer on which VersaWorks has been installed), open the folder [C:\Program Files\VersaWorks\Swatch\Illustrator].**

2. **Copy the "Roland VersaWorks.ai" file.**

   MEMO

   - Copy the **"Roland VersaWorks.ai"** file. Do not cut or move this file.
   - If the target computer (computer where Adobe Illustrator is installed) is not the RIP server, use the network or a piece of external media to copy this file.
   - In addition to the **"Roland VersaWorks.ai"** file for cutting lines, the [C:\Program Files\VersaWorks\Swatch\Illustrator] folder also contains the spot color, special color, and other files. Adding all files will be convenient.

3. **Open the [Swatch] or [Swatch Library] folder in [C:\Program Files\Adobe\Adobe Illustrator 20**\Presets\(Language)] on the target computer.**

4. **Paste the "Roland VersaWorks.ai" file.**

*1 The red broken line is the cut line.

Creating the Cutting Data

Procedure

1. **Start Illustrator on the target computer and create the print data.**
2. **Create the cutting line.**
   Create a path at the locations you want to cut, such as the outline. Make the created path a line.
3. **Select the cutting line that was created in Step 2.**
4. **From the menu bar, click [Window]>[Swatch Library].**
   The [**RolandVersaWorks**] swatch library is displayed.
5. **Apply [CutContour] or [PerfCutContour] to the cutting line.**
   - Cut: [**CutContour**]
   - Perforated Cut: [**PerfCutContour**]
6. **Save as vector data in PDF, EPS, or PS format.**

CorelDRAW

Use CorelDRAW to create cut data. The following operation procedure uses CorelDRAW version 25.0.0.230.

MEMO

The operation procedure may vary depending on the version. For details on this procedure, visit the website of each company.

Registering the Cutting Line Spot Color

Procedure

1. **On the RIP server (the computer on which VersaWorks has been installed), open the folder [C:\Program Files\VersaWorks\Swatch\CorelDRAW].**

2. **Copy the "userinks.xml" file.**

   MEMO

   - Copy the "**userinks.xml**" file. Do not cut or move this file.
   - If the target computer (computer where CorelDRAW is installed) is not the RIP server, use the network or a piece of external media to copy this file.

3. **Copy the "userinks.xml" file to the desired location on the target computer.**

Creating the Cutting Data

Procedure

1. **Start CorelDRAW on the target computer and create the print data.**

2. **Create the cutting line.**

   Create a path at the locations you want to cut, such as the outline. Make the created path a line.

3. **On the menu in CorelDRAW, click [Window]>[Color Palettes]>[Palettes].**

   The [**Palettes**] window appears.

4. **Click**  **under the drop-down list.**

5. **Select the "userinks.xml" file that you copied in Registering the Cutting Line Spot Color(P. 288), and then click [Open].**

6. **Delete the "userinks.xml" file that you copied in Registering the Cutting Line Spot Color(P. 288).**

7. **Select the created cutting line and double-click on** 

.

   The [**Outline Pen**] window appears.

8. **Click**  **to the right of [Color], and then select**  **.**

   The [**Color Palette**] window appears.

9. Select "Roland VersaWorks Dual.xml" from the drop-down list.

10. Apply [CutContour] or [PerfCutContour] to the cutting line.
    - Cut: [**CutContour**]
    - Perforated Cut: [**PerfCutContour**]

11. Close the [Outline Pen] window.

12. Click [File]>[Export] and save as vector data in PDF, EPS, or PS format.

Creating with Job Assistant

Use Job Assistant and add cutting lines to print data where cutting lines have not been created with the illustration software.

MEMO

- Job Assistant can be used only with PDF format data. For data in formats other than PDF, add the cutting lines using the illustration software.
- To use Job Assistant, it must be installed on a PC.

Create a Cutting Line From Shapes Included in the Print Data

Create a cutting line around the outline or shape based on the shapes (paths or shapes) included in the print data.



Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to display the Job Assistant window.**
   - Right-click on the job to set, then click [**Job Assistant**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Job Assistant**] on the menu bar.

2. **Click**  **.**

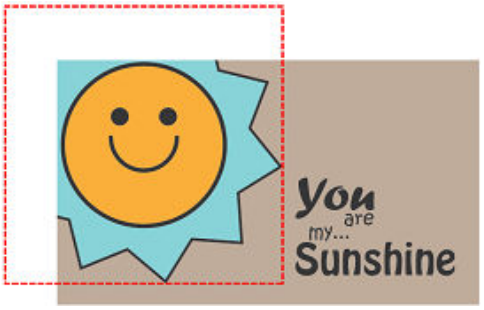
3. **Click to select the path or image that will be the basis of the cutting line.**
   - When the desired shape cannot be selected: Hold down the ctrl key while clicking the desired shape. This will allow multiple overlapping shapes and shapes within shapes to be selected.
   - When selecting multiple shapes: Hold down the shift key and click on the desired shapes.
   - To cancel a selection: Click on a blank location where there is no object.

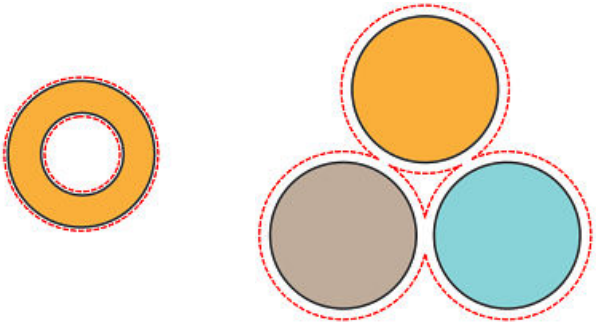
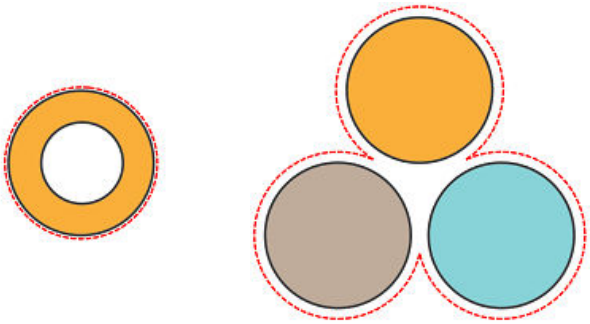
4. **Select the editing method**  **.**

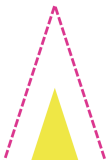
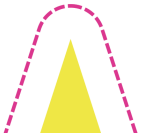
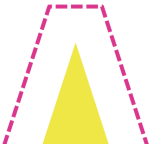
5. **Select [Type of Cut] from the following.**

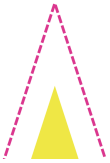
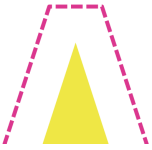
 : [**Cut**]	Cuts solid lines over the cutting lines that were created.
 : [**Perforated Cut**]	Cuts perforated (broken) lines over the cutting lines that were created.

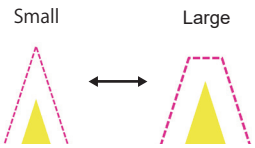
6. **Select the following conditions for [Create Cutting Line].**

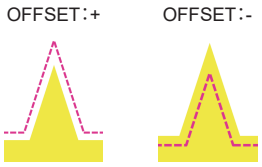
[Type of Contour]	
: **[Outline]** Creates cutting lines based on the outline of the selected image. This will ignore any clipping mask.	
: **[Clipped Outline]** If the selected image has a clipping mask, cutting lines will be created based on the outline of the part that is not masked. If the selected image does not have a clipping mask, it creates a cutting line in the same manner as **[Outline]**.	
: **[Bounding Box]** Creates a rectangular cutting line around the selected image.	

[Cut Interior]	
: **[Cut Interior]** If there are outlines on the inside of the selected image (as in the figure at top right), or you have selected multiple images and outlines can be made on the inside of adjacent images (as in the figure at lower right), a cutting line will be created on the inside.	
: **[Do Not Cut Interior]** Even if there are outlines on the inside of the selected image (as in the figure at top right), or you have selected multiple images and outlines can be made on the inside of adjacent images (as in the figure at lower right), a cutting line will not be created on the inside.	

[Corner Shape]	
: [Miter] Creates a cutting line that maintains the corner shape. Note, however, that if [**Miter Limit**] is on, the cutting line will be chamfered depending on the angle.	
: [Round] Creates a cutting line that rounds the corners.	
: [Bevel] Creates a cutting line that chamfers the corners.	

[Miter Limit] (Enabled only when [Miter] is selected for [Corner Shape].)	
Off Creates a cutting line that maintains the corner regardless of the angle.	
On Chamfers the corners according to the [**Angle**] settings.	

[Angle] (Enabled only when [Miter Limit] is on.)	
Use the slider to set the [**Angle**] to be chamfered. The more you set the angle to the [**Large**] direction, the wider will be the angle at which chamfering is performed.	

[offset]	
Sets the distance from the outline of the selected shape at which to create the cutting line.	

7. **Click [Create].**

The created cutting line is displayed. Solid lines are displayed in pink, and broken lines are displayed in gray.

8. **Click [OK].**

9. **In the confirmation window, click [Yes].**

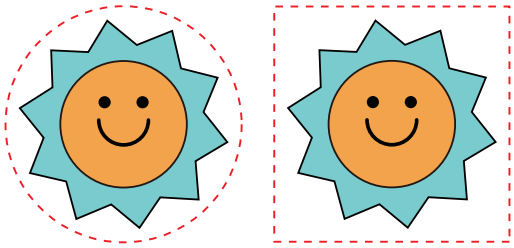
The [**Job Assistant**] window closes. It will be added to the job list as a new job.

RELATED LINKS

- P. 299 Editing Cutting Lines

Create a Cutting Line in an Ellipse or Rectangular Shape

An ellipse or a rectangle can be added as a cutting line.



IMPORTANT

Cutting lines can only be added to PDF-format jobs.

Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to display the Job Assistant window.**
   - Right-click on the job to set, then click [**Job Assistant**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Job Assistant**] on the menu bar.
2. **Click**  **.**
3. **Select the editing method**  **[Draw Cutting Line].**
4. **Select [Type of Cut] from the following.**

 : [Cut]	Cuts solid lines over the cutting lines that were created.
 : [Perforated Cut]	Cuts perforated (broken) lines over the cutting lines that were created.

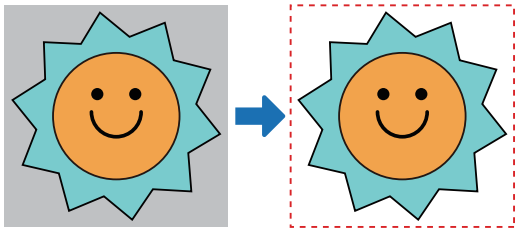
5. **Select the shape of the cutting line.**
   -  : Ellipse
   -  : Rectangle
6. **Click [Draw].**

   The cutting line for the selected shape is displayed. Solid lines are displayed in pink, and broken lines are displayed in gray.
7. **Select a cutting line and use the mouse to match the size and position to the print data.**
8. **Click [OK].**
9. **In the confirmation window, click [Yes].**

The [**Job Assistant**] window closes. It will be added to the job list as a new job.

Replacing Shapes Contained in Print Data with Cutting Lines

You can replace some of the shapes (paths and images) inside the print data with cutting lines.



IMPORTANT

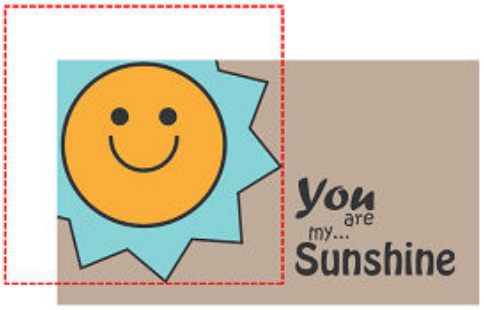
Cutting lines can only be added to PDF-format jobs.

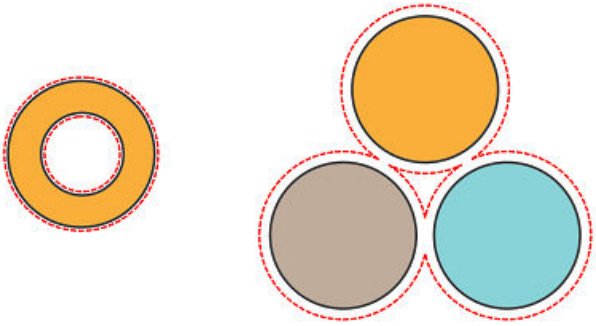
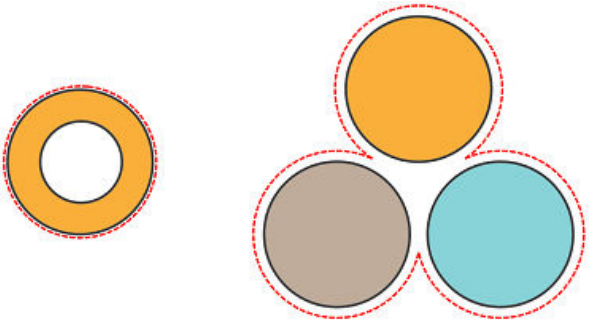
Procedure

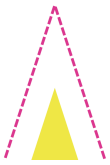
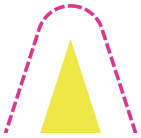
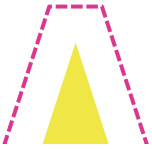
1. **Use one of the methods below to display the Job Assistant window.**
   - Right-click on the job to set, then click [**Job Assistant**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Job Assistant**] on the menu bar.
2. **Click**  **.**
3. **Click the shape to be replaced with a cutting line.**
   - When the desired shape cannot be selected: Hold down the ctrl key while clicking the desired shape. This will allow multiple overlapping shapes and shapes within shapes to be selected.
   - When selecting multiple shapes: Hold down the shift key and click on the desired shapes.
   - To cancel a selection: Click on a blank location where there is no object.
4. **Select the editing method**  **.**
5. **Select the [Type of Cut] from those shown below.**

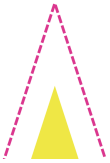
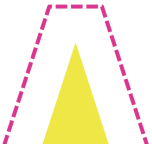
 : [Cut]	Cuts solid lines over the cutting lines that were created.
 : [Perforated Cut]	Cuts perforated (broken) lines over the cutting lines that were created.

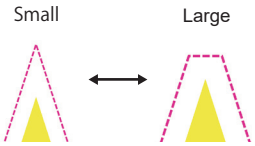
6. **Select the following conditions for [Replace with Cutting Line].**

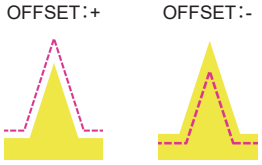
[Type of Contour]	
: **[Outline]** Creates cutting lines based on the outline of the selected image. This will ignore any clipping mask.	
: **[Clipped Outline]** If the selected image has a clipping mask, cutting lines will be created based on the outline of the part that is not masked. If the selected image does not have a clipping mask, it creates a cutting line in the same manner as **[Outline]**.	
: **[Bounding Box]** Creates a rectangular cutting line around the selected image.	

[Cut Interior]	
: **[Cut Interior]** If there are outlines on the inside of the selected image (as in the figure at top right), or you have selected multiple images and outlines can be made on the inside of adjacent images (as in the figure at lower right), a cutting line will be created on the inside.	
: **[Do Not Cut Interior]** Even if there are outlines on the inside of the selected image (as in the figure at top right), or you have selected multiple images and outlines can be made on the inside of adjacent images (as in the figure at lower right), a cutting line will not be created on the inside.	

[Corner Shape]	
: [Miter] Creates a cutting line that maintains the corner shape. Note, however, that if [**Miter Limit**] is on, the cutting line will be chamfered depending on the angle.	
: [Round] Creates a cutting line that rounds the corners.	
: [Bevel] Creates a cutting line that chamfers the corners.	

[Miter Limit] (Enabled only when [Miter] is selected for [Corner Shape].)	
Off Creates a cutting line that maintains the corner regardless of the angle.	
On Chamfers the corners according to the [**Angle**] settings.	

[Angle] (Enabled only when [Miter Limit] is on.)	
Use the slider to set the [**Angle**] to be chamfered. The more you set the angle to the [**Large**] direction, the wider will be the angle at which chamfering is performed.	

[offset]	
Sets the distance from the outline of the selected shape at which to create the cutting line.	

7. **Click [Replace].**

The replaced cutting line is displayed. Solid lines are displayed in pink, and broken lines are displayed in gray.

8. **Click [OK].**

9. **In the confirmation window, click [Yes].**

The [**Job Assistant**] window closes. It will be added to the job list as a new job.

Editing Cutting Lines

Re-editing is possible to change the cutting line conditions.

Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to display the Job Assistant window.**
   - Right-click on the job to set, then click [**Job Assistant**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Job Assistant**] on the menu bar.

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **Click the cutting line to be edited.**
   - When the desired shape cannot be selected: Hold down the ctrl key while clicking the desired shape. This will allow multiple overlapping shapes and shapes within shapes to be selected.
   - When selecting multiple shapes: Hold down the shift key and click on the desired shapes.
   - To cancel a selection: Click on a blank location where there is no object.

4. **Select the editing method**  **[Replace with Cutting Line].**

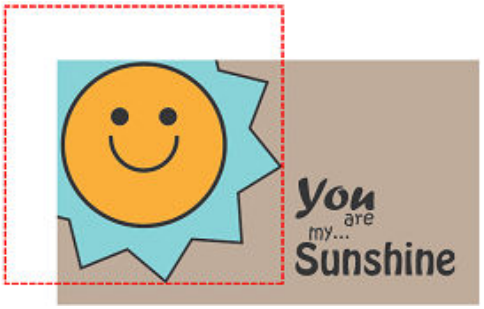
5. **Change the cutting line conditions.**

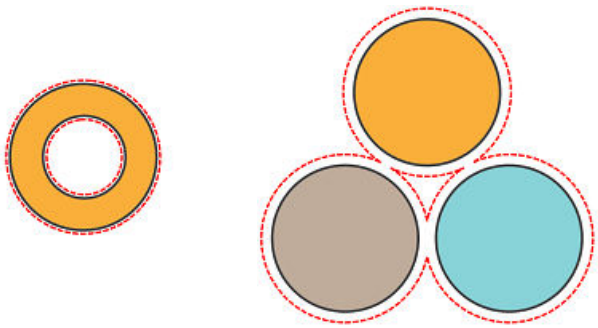
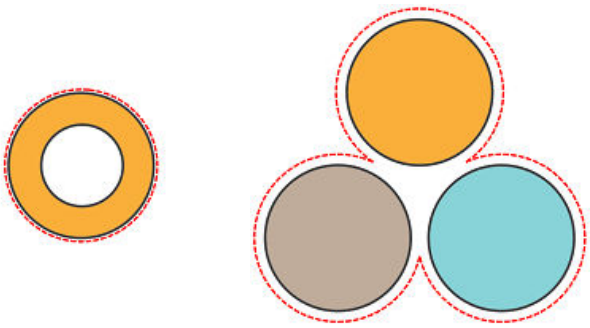
IMPORTANT

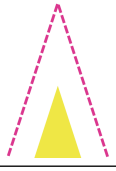
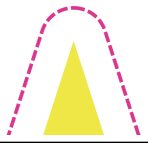
If you do not want to change the distance between the print data and the cutting line with the original cutting line, set [**offset**] to 0.
Setting [**offset**] to anything other than 0 will result in it being set as the offset amount from the selected cutting line.

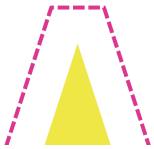
 : [**Cut**]	Cuts solid lines over the cutting lines that were created.
 : [**Perforated Cut**]	Cuts perforated (broken) lines over the cutting lines that were created.

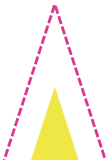
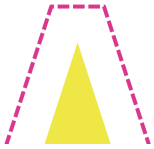
[Type of Contour]	
 : [**Outline**] Creates cutting lines based on the outline of the selected image. This will ignore any clipping mask.	

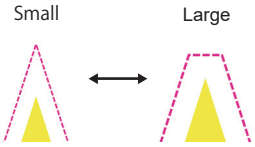
[Type of Contour]	
: [Clipped Outline] If the selected image has a clipping mask, cutting lines will be created based on the outline of the part that is not masked. If the selected image does not have a clipping mask, it creates a cutting line in the same manner as [**Outline**].	
: [Bounding Box] Creates a rectangular cutting line around the selected image.	

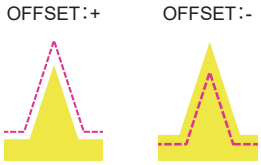
[Cut Interior]	
: [Cut Interior] If there are outlines on the inside of the selected image (as in the figure at top right), or you have selected multiple images and outlines can be made on the inside of adjacent images (as in the figure at lower right), a cutting line will be created on the inside.	
: [Do Not Cut Interior] Even if there are outlines on the inside of the selected image (as in the figure at top right), or you have selected multiple images and outlines can be made on the inside of adjacent images (as in the figure at lower right), a cutting line will not be created on the inside.	

[Corner Shape]	
: [Miter] Creates a cutting line that maintains the corner shape. Note, however, that if [**Miter Limit**] is on, the cutting line will be chamfered depending on the angle.	
: [Round] Creates a cutting line that rounds the corners.	

[Corner Shape]	
: [Bevel] Creates a cutting line that chamfers the corners.	

[Miter Limit] (Enabled only when [Miter] is selected for [Corner Shape].)	
Off Creates a cutting line that maintains the corner regardless of the angle.	
On Chamfers the corners according to the [**Angle**] settings.	

[Angle] (Enabled only when [Miter Limit] is on.)	
Use the slider to set the [**Angle**] to be chamfered. The more you set the angle to the [**Large**] direction, the wider will be the angle at which chamfering is performed.	

[offset]	
Sets the distance from the outline of the selected shape at which to create the cutting line.	

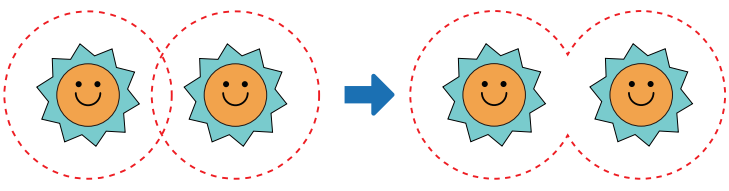
6. **Click [Replace].**

The cutting line will be changed according to set conditions. Solid lines are displayed in pink, and broken lines are displayed in gray.

MEMO

To merge multiple cutting lines that were already created, perform one of the following procedures:

1. Select the editing method  [**Merge Multiple Cutting Lines**] on the [**Job Assistant**] window.
2. Click the cutting lines to be merged.
   You can select multiple shapes by holding down the shift key while clicking.
3. Click [**Merge**].
   The selected cutting lines will become a joined cutting line.



7. **Click [OK].**

8. **In the confirmation window, click [Yes].**
   The [**Job Assistant**] window closes. It will be added to the job list as a new job.

Changing the Color of the Cutting Line

You can set the color of the cutting line to make it easily distinguishable from the print data.

Procedure

1. **Use one of the methods below to display the Job Assistant window.**
   - Right-click on the job to set, then click [**Job Assistant**].
   - Click [**Job**]>[**Job Assistant**] on the menu bar.
2. **Click**  **.**
3. **Select the color from the pull-down list.**
   You can select a different color for each[**Type of Cut**] ([**Cut**] or [**Perforated Cut**]) set in the following pages.
   The color of the cutting line changes to the selected color.
4. **Click [OK].**
5. **In the confirmation window, click [Yes].**
   The [**Job Assistant**] window closes. It will be added to the job list as a new job.

Cutting Output

Performing Just Cutting 305
Performing Printing and Cutting Continuously 307
Print, Laminate, and Cut: Cutting with Crop Marks 309
Step 1: Print with crop marks. 309
Step 2: Cut the Processed Media 311
Applying Crop Marks Individually to Multiple Images 313
Performing Printing after Cutting 314
Performing Perforated Cutting at Image Boundaries 317
Configuring the Cutting Conditions 319
Step 1: Perform Test Cutting 319
Step 2: Configuring the Cutting Conditions 321

Performing Just Cutting

Even with print data where there is no cutting line around the border, it is possible to set cutting at image boundaries and perform cutting output.

However, when the print data is an EPS file and a cutting line has been drawn around the border, it is possible that the saved print data has a cutting line that is outside the printing area. In this case, it is not possible to cut all of the outside. Either correct the print data so it has margins, or else configure the settings listed in the note on [**IMPORTANT**] in Step 6.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **From the [Operation Mode] list, select [Cut Only].**

4. **Select the following check boxes as necessary.**
   - [**Cut Image Boundaries**]

     Cuts the border of the job regardless of whether a cutting line is present. The generated border cutting line can be checked with the preview in the job settings window.
   - [**Return to Origin After Cut**]

     Returns the media to the origin (the position before cutting) after cutting. Set when performing printing after cutting.
   - [**Cut Passes**]

     Use this option to specify the number of cut passes when cutting thick media or hard media. Depending on the media, cutting multiple times with lower blade force may give more aesthetically pleasing results than cutting once with higher blade force.
   - [**Cutting Conditions Settings**]

     Enables the setting of printer cutting conditions such as [**Cutting Speed**].
     P. 319 Configuring the Cutting Conditions
   - [**Execute PREFEED Operation**]

     Feeds out media according to the size of the data sent from the computer, pulls the media back to the output-start location, and then performs output. The cutting quality is stable because cutting is not performed while roll media is pulled tight.

5. **Configure other settings such as the media settings if necessary.**

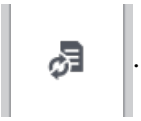
6. **Click [OK].**
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

IMPORTANT

- The print data is an EPS file.

- A cutting line has been drawn around the border.

If both of the above conditions are met, additional settings are required. If you do not configure these additional settings, it may not be possible to cut a part of the border. Configure the settings shown below.

1. Double-click the job.
2. In the [**Queue Properties**] window, click  .
3. Enter a value in [**Margin**] under [**EPS**].
   - If you scale the image in the [**Queue Properties**]>[**Layout**] or [**Job Settings**]>[**Layout**] window, the size of the margin will also be scaled.
   - When you add a job to the job list, the margin set with [**Margin**] is automatically added within the range specified by the border.

7. Add the job containing cutting lines to the job list, and then click  .

Cutting starts along the cutting lines of the selected job.

MEMO

- Recognized cutting lines are displayed as red dotted lines in the preview area in the [**Job Settings**] window.



- You can also change these settings in the [**Job Settings**] window after adding a job to the job list. However, you cannot change the [**Cut All Paths**] setting or the [**Margin**] setting under [**EPS**].

Performing Printing and Cutting Continuously

Automatically pulls back the media after printing and then performs cutting.

Even with print data where there is no cutting line around the border, it is possible to set cutting at image boundaries and perform cutting output.

However, when the print data is an EPS file and a cutting line has been drawn around the border, it is possible that the saved print data has a cutting line that is outside the printing area. In this case, it is not possible to cut all of the outside. Either correct the print data so it has margins, or else configure the settings listed under [**MEMO**] in Step 6.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **From the [Operation Mode] list, select [Print & Cut].**

4. **Select the following check boxes as necessary.**
   - [**Cut All Paths**]

     Cuts along all lines (paths) drawn in vector format in the data. All paths will be recognized as cutting lines and will be cut regardless of whether they are drawn with the spot color (CutContour).
   - [**Cut Image Boundaries**]

     Cuts the border of the job regardless of whether a cutting line is present. The generated border cutting line can be checked with the preview in the job settings window.
   - [**Return to Origin After Print**]

     Pulls back the media after printing.
   - [**Return to Origin After Cut**]

     Returns the media to the origin (the position before cutting) after cutting.
   - [**Cut Passes**]

     Use this option to specify the number of cut passes when cutting thick media or hard media. Depending on the media, cutting multiple times with lower blade force may give more aesthetically pleasing results than cutting once with higher blade force.
   - [**Cutting Conditions Settings**]

     The settings can be configured for [**Cutting Speed**] and other printer cutting conditions.
     P. 319 Configuring the Cutting Conditions
   - [**Execute PREFEED Operation**]

     Feeds out media according to the size of the data sent from the computer, pulls the media back to the output-start location, and then performs output. The cutting quality is especially stable because the media is not forcefully pulled tight.

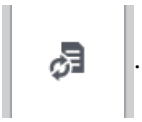
5. **Configure other settings such as the media settings if necessary.**

6. **Click [OK] .**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.

- When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
  a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
  b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

MEMO

- The print data is an EPS file.
- A cutting line has been drawn around the border.
  If both of the above conditions are met, additional settings are required. If you do not configure these additional settings, it may not be possible to cut a part of the border. Configure the settings shown below.

1. Double-click the job.
2. In the [**Queue Properties**] window, click  .
3. Enter a value in [**Margin**] under [**EPS**].
   - If you scale the image in the [**Queue Properties**]>[**Layout**] or [**Job Settings**]>[**Layout**] window, the size of the margin will also be scaled.
   - When you add a job to the job list, the margin set with [**Margin**] is automatically added within the range specified by the border.

7. Add the job containing cutting lines to the job list, and then click .

First, the job is printed. When printing finishes, cutting starts automatically.

MEMO

- You can also change these settings in the [**Job Settings**] window after adding a job to the job list. However, you cannot change the [**Cut All Paths**] setting or the [**Margin**] setting under [**EPS**].
- If, after printing, you want to allow the ink to dry before starting cutting, set the [**Dry Time**] according to the information in Setting the Drying Time after Printing(P. 108).

Print, Laminate, and Cut: Cutting with Crop Marks

Printed media is removed, laminated or otherwise processed, loaded again in the printer, and then cut.

Step 1: Print with crop marks.

Follow the procedure below to print a job with crop marks used for position adjustment.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.
2. **Click** .
3. **Select the [Crop Marks (Print&Cut Alignment)] check box.**
4. **Click** .
5. **From the [Operation Mode] list, select [Print Only].**
6. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

   MEMO

   - The print data is an EPS file.
   - A cutting line has been drawn around the border.

   If both of the above conditions are met, additional settings are required. If you do not configure these additional settings, it may not be possible to cut a part of the border. Configure the settings shown below.

   1. In the [**Queue Properties**] window, click .
   2. Enter a value in [**Margin**] under [**EPS**].
      - If you scale the image in the [**Queue Properties**]>[**Layout**] or [**Job Settings**]>[**Layout**] window, the size of the margin will also be scaled.
      - When you add a job to the job list, the margin set with [**Margin**] is automatically added within the range specified by the border.
7. **Add the job containing cutting lines to the job list, and then click .**

MEMO

These settings can also be customized per job using the [**Job Settings**] window.

The job is printed with crop marks.

Step 2: Cut the Processed Media

Step 2: Cut the Processed Media

Removed media is laminated or otherwise processed, then loaded again in the printer and only cutting is performed.

Procedure

1. **Apply the lamination or other desired post-processing, and then set up the media on the printer again.**

   For details on setting up media that includes crop marks, refer to the printer manual.

2. **Double-click the printed job.**

   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

   IMPORTANT

   If the [**Center on the Media**] check box is selected, clear it. If the [**Center on the Media**] check box is selected, the printing and cutting positions may be misaligned.

3. **Click**  **.**

4. **Check that [Crop Marks (Print&Cut Alignment)] under [Marks] is on.**

5. **Click**  **.**

6. **From the [Operation Mode] list, select [Cut Only].**

7. **Select the following check boxes as necessary.**

   - [**Cut All Paths**]

     Cuts along all lines (paths) drawn in vector format in the data. All paths will be recognized as cutting lines and will be cut regardless of whether they are drawn with the spot color (CutContour).
   - [**Cut Image Boundaries**]

     Cuts the border of the job regardless of whether a cutting line is present. The generated border cutting line can be checked with the preview in the job settings window.
   - [**Return to Origin After Print**]

     Pulls back the media after printing.
   - [**Return to Origin After Cut**]

     Returns the media to the origin (the position before cutting) after cutting.
   - [**Cut Passes**]

     Use this option to specify the number of cut passes when cutting thick media or hard media. Depending on the media, cutting multiple times with lower blade force may give more aesthetically pleasing results than cutting once with higher blade force.
   - [**Cutting Conditions Settings**]

     The settings can be configured for [**Cutting Speed**] and other printer cutting conditions.
     P. 319 Configuring the Cutting Conditions
   - [**Execute PREFEED Operation**]

Feeds out media according to the size of the data sent from the computer, pulls the media back to the output-start location, and then performs output. The cutting quality is especially stable because the media is not forcefully pulled tight.

8. **Click [OK] to close the [Job Settings] window.**

9. **Click**  **.**

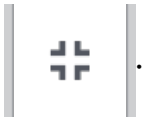
   The printer detects the crop marks to adjust the position of the media, and then performs cutting.

Applying Crop Marks Individually to Multiple Images

You can apply crop marks "for each row" or "for each data entry" within a group of images. Although this increases the time required for output, it also increases the accuracy when performing printing and cutting or cutting with crop marks. Configure this setting for print data that includes cutting lines.

Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **In the job list, double-click the printing job that includes cutting lines.**
   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.
2. **Click**  .
3. **Set [Copy] under [Print Quality].**
   Set the number of copies to output.
4. **Click**  .
5. **Select the [Crop Marks (Print&Cut Alignment)] check box, and then choose [For Each Row] or [For Each Data Entry].**
   - [**For Each Row**]: Crop marks will be applied with the row of images treated as a single group.
   - [**For Each Data Entry**]: Crop marks will be applied to each individual image.

   The preview window can be used to check how crop marks are applied.
6. **Click [OK].**
   Crop marks can be applied to nested jobs in the same manner. However, all the jobs must be the same size.
   P. 146 Creating a Nested Job from the Selected Jobs

Performing Printing after Cutting

This method uses print data including cutting lines to perform cutting first followed by printing. Performing cutting first reduces the drying time compared to cutting after printing. Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

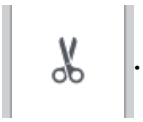
Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**

   MEMO

   If you want to cut all the paths, open the [**Queue Properties**]. You cannot configure the settings from the [**Job Settings**].

   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **From the [Operation Mode] list, select [Cut & Print].**

   MEMO

   When you select [**Cut & Print**], the following settings are disabled.

   - [**Crop Marks (Print&Cut Alignment)**]
     P. 309 Step 1: Print with crop marks.
   - [**RIP while Printing**]
     P. 151 Printing while Processing by the RIP
   - [**Enable Variable Data Printing**]
     P. 205 Step 3: Load the Files Required for Variable Printing

4. **Select the following check boxes as necessary.**

   - [**Cut All Paths**]

     Cuts along all lines (paths) drawn in vector format in the data. All paths will be recognized as cutting lines and will be cut regardless of whether they are drawn with the spot color (CutContour).
   - [**Cut Image Boundaries**]

     Cuts the border of the job regardless of whether a cutting line is present. The generated border cutting line can be checked with the preview in the job settings window.
   - [**Return to Origin After Print**]

     Pulls back the media after printing.
   - [**Return to Origin After Cut**]

     Returns the media to the origin (the position before cutting) after cutting.
   - [**Cut Passes**]

     Use this option to specify the number of cut passes when cutting thick media or hard media. Depending on the media, cutting multiple times with lower blade force may give more aesthetically pleasing results than cutting once with higher blade force.
   - [**Cutting Conditions Settings**]

The settings can be configured for [**Cutting Speed**] and other printer cutting conditions.
P. 319 Configuring the Cutting Conditions

- [**Execute PREFEED Operation**]

  Feeds out media according to the size of the data sent from the computer, pulls the media back to the output-start location, and then performs output. The cutting quality is especially stable because the media is not forcefully pulled tight.

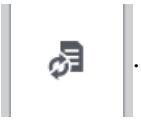
5. **Configure other settings such as the media settings if necessary.**

6. **Click [OK].**

- Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
- When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
  a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
  b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

MEMO

- The print data is an EPS file.
- A cutting line has been drawn around the border.
  If both of the above conditions are met, additional settings are required. If you do not configure these additional settings, it may not be possible to cut a part of the border. Configure the settings shown below.

1. In the [**Queue Properties**] window, click  .
2. Enter the value in [**Margin**] under [**EPS**].
   - If you scale the image in the [**Queue Properties**] or [**Job Settings**] window, the size of the margin will also be scaled.
   - When you add a job to the job list, the margin set with [**Margin**] is automatically added within the range specified by the border.

7. **Click .**

The [**Advanced Print Settings**] window appears.

8. **Set the [Print Count].**

- If you do not want to specify the print count, see Printing Only Once at All Times.
- If you want to place multiple sets of data to print in order to ensure that no media is wasted, set the [**Print Count**] to 1, and then set [**Copy**] according to the information in Setting the Number of Copies to Print.

9. **Click [Print].**

First, the job is cutting. When cutting finishes, printing starts automatically. This operation is repeated for the number of times specified with [**Print Count**].

MEMO

- You can also change these settings in the [**Job Settings**] window after adding a job to the job list. However, you cannot change the [**Cut All Paths**] setting or the [**Margin**] setting under [**EPS**].
- If you want to set [**Enable Variable Data Printing**] on the [**Job Settings**] window, select an option other than [**Cut & Print**]. When [**Enable Variable Data Printing**] is enabled, you cannot select [**Cut & Print**].

P. 205 Step 3: Load the Files Required for Variable Printing

Performing Perforated Cutting at Image Boundaries

This method performs perforated cutting at image boundaries for print data including cutting lines. Depending on the model you are using, this setting may be disabled.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. **Click**  .

3. **From the [Operation Mode] list, select one of the following.**
   - [**Print & Cut**]
   - [**Cut & Print**]
   - [**Cut Only**]

4. **Select the [Perform Perforated Cut for Image Boundaries] check box under [Perforated Cut Controls].**
   Set items such as [**Cutting Options**]>[**Cut All Paths**] as necessary.

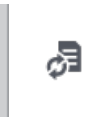
5. **Select the [Cut Image Boundaries] check box.**

6. **Set [Perforation Length], [Perforation Force], [Half-cut Length], and [Half-cut Force].**
   - [**Perforation Length**]: Length of the part that will be cut through to the backing paper
   - [**Perforation Force**]: Cutting force for the part that will be cut through to the backing paper
   - [**Half-cut Length**]: Length of the part where just the sticker surface will be cut, leaving the backing paper
   - [**Half-cut Force**]: Cutting force for the part where just the sticker surface will be cut, leaving the backing paper

7. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click .

MEMO

- The print data is an EPS file.
- A cutting line has been drawn around the border.
  If both of the above conditions are met, additional settings are required. If you do not configure these additional settings, it may not be possible to cut a part of the border. Configure the settings shown below.

1. In the [**Queue Properties**] window, click  .
2. Enter a value in [**Margin**] under [**EPS**].

- If you scale the image in the [**Queue Properties**]>[**Layout**] or [**Job Settings**]>[**Layout**] window, the size of the margin will also be scaled.
- When you add a job to the job list, the margin set with [**Margin**] is automatically added within the range specified by the border.

8. **Click** .

Output starts.

MEMO

You can also change these settings in the [**Job Settings**] window after adding a job to the job list. However, you cannot change the [**Cut All Paths**] setting or the [**Margin**] setting under [**EPS**].

Configuring the Cutting Conditions

On printers with cutting capabilities, cutting conditions can be set from VersaWorks.

MEMO

- To enable the changed settings, you have to set the printer to give priority to the VersaWorks settings prior to starting cutting. For the printer settings, refer to the printer manual.
- These settings can also be customized per job using the [**Job Settings**]>[**Cut Controls**] window.

Step 1: Perform Test Cutting

Procedure

1. **Click [Printer]>[Test Cut] on the menu bar.**

   The following message appears: [**The following cutting will be performed. Do you want to continue?**]

   Test cutting will be performed under the displayed conditions. Check the page size and media type.

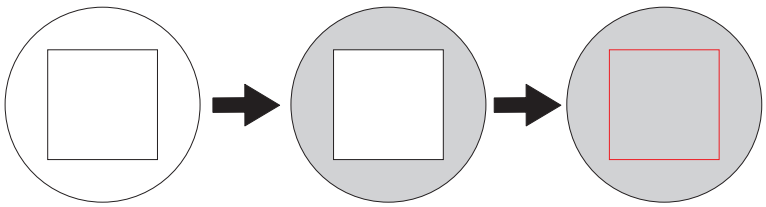
2. **Click [OK].**

   The job for test cutting is added to the job list (Queue A folder), and the test pattern is cut automatically.

   Once the job has been cut, it is automatically deleted from the job list.

3. **Check the results of the cutting test.**

   It is necessary to adjust the settings for each item according to the test results.



Check item	Result	Setting item	Adjustment
Check the shape.	The cut shape is distorted.	[**Cutting Speed**]	Reduce
Peel off the circle.	The square also peels off.	[**Cutting Force**]	Increase
	Some uncut areas remain.	[**Cutting Speed**]	Reduce
Peel off the square.	The blade leaves faint traces on the backing paper.	[**Cutting Force**]	No change
	The blade trace is indistinct.		Increase
	The blade trace is too deep and cuts into the backing paper.		Reduce

Check item	Result		Setting item	Adjustment
Check the shape of the square you have peeled off.		The corners are not rounded and do not have "horns."	[**Blade Offset**]	No change
		The corners are rounded.		Increase
		The corners have "horns."		Reduce

Step 2: Configuring the Cutting Conditions

Follow the procedure below to configure the cutting conditions on the basis of the type of media or the result of test cutting.

Procedure

1. **Perform the operation shown below according to what is being set.**
   - Job: Double-click the job to open the [**Job Settings**] window.
   - Queue folder: Click  for the queue folder to open the [**Queue Properties**] window.

2. **Click**  .

3. **From the [Operation Mode] list, select [Cut Only] or [Print & Cut].**

4. **Select the [Cut Passes] check box, and then enter the number of passes.**

   MEMO

   When cutting thick media or hard media, depending on the media, cutting multiple times with lower blade force may give more aesthetically pleasing results than cutting once with higher blade force. Increase the number of cut passes as necessary.

5. **Select the [Cutting Conditions Settings] check box.**

   Adjust the setting based on the test cutting results from Step 1.

Setting item	Details
[**Cutting Speed**]	Enter the cutting speed in cm/s.
[**Cutting Force**]	Enter the blade force in units of gram-force.
[**Blade Offset**]	Enter the blade offset value (the distance between the tip and the center of the blade) in millimeters. Enter the offset value for the blade being used.

6. **Click [OK].**
   - Any changes made in [**Job Settings**] will be applied.
   - When changes are made in [**Queue Properties**]:
     a. A message that printing settings will be overwritten appears. Click [**Yes**].
     b. To apply the changes to a job already in the queue folder, select the job and click  .

Managing Media Information

Creating New Media

Registering New Media 324
Step 1: Create New Media 324
Step 2: Prepare to Create a Profile 325
Step 3: Create a Profile 328
Step 4: Register a Profile 329
Step 5: Configure the Default Printer Control Settings 330
Step 6: Finalize the Registration of the New Media 332

Registering New Media

Media refers to general items to be printed on such as roll/sheet media to be printed on and thick objects to be printed on with the flat-bed printer. In VersaWorks, media refers to items to which settings allowing for printing on the above items have been added. Select from [**Quality**]>[**Quality Settings**]>[**Media Type**] in [**Queue Properties**] or [**Job Settings**].

This defines the resolution, profile, ink limits, gradation curve values, and other detailed parameters that are used in the settings for that media.

The following three methods can be used to create or obtain new media rather than the genuine media that is registered in VersaWorks in advance.

- Creating from a template: Step 1: Create New Media(P. 324)
- Creating by replicating genuine media and changing the settings: Customizing Media(P. 334)
- Obtaining existing media: Using an Existing Media File(P. 338)

Step 1: Create New Media

Utilize a template and create new media. A measurement instrument and profile creation software will be used at a future process.

Procedure

1. **Click [Media]>[Media Explorer] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Media Explorer**] window appears.
2. **Click .**
   The [**Create New Media**] window appears.
3. **Enter the media name in [Media Name].**
4. **Select the [Template], and then click [OK].**
   The media you created is added to the [**Media Explorer**] window.

MEMO

- Available templates vary by printer. Select the template according to the type of media (such as PVC and banner) to be registered.
- To create new media by using existing media as a template, follow the procedure below.
  1. Select the media to use as the template, and then click . The [**Copy Media**] window appears.
  2. Enter the media name, and then click [**OK**].
- You can rename the media later.
  1. Select the media, and then click . The [**Change Media Name**] window appears.
  2. Enter the new name for the media, and then click [**OK**].

Step 2: Prepare to Create a Profile

Step 2: Prepare to Create a Profile

Follow the procedure below to prepare to create a profile that matches the printing quality of the selected media.

Procedure

1. **Set the measurement instrument.**

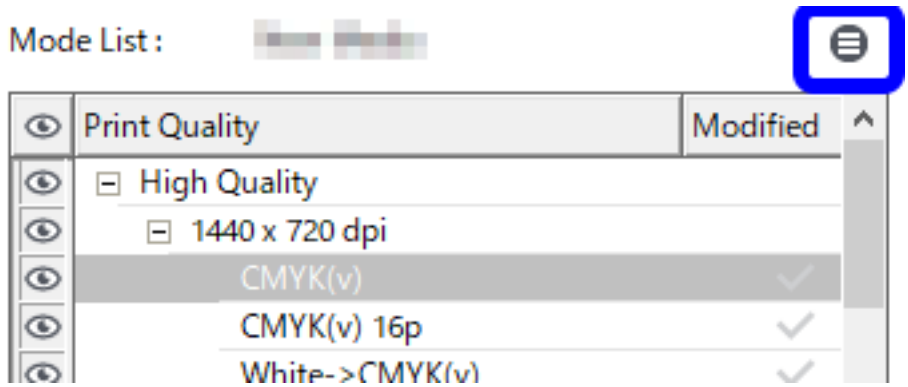
   Set it to make it ready to perform the measurement.

2. **Select the media you created.**

3. **Select the printing quality mode that will be used for the selected media from the [Mode List].**

   - Variable dot modes (modes that use dots of varying sizes) have "(v)" next to their name. Modes without "(v)" next to their name are printed using dots of a fixed size.
   - Halftone printing mode is available in some of the modes that use fixed dots (the [**Halftone**] setting becomes [**Angled Screen**]).
   - Clear the [**Hide Non-recommended Modes**] check box to display all the available modes. You can show/hide the modes by clicking .

4. **Click** .

   The display of the window changes.

5. **Perform [Quality Settings].**

   (1) **Under [Category]>[Quality Settings], click [Print Quality].**

   (2) **If necessary, set the [Direction], [Head Speed], [Feed Speed], [Overprint], and [Optimizer Level]. (Also set [Frequency], [Dot Shape], and [Angle] under [Halftone Options] if [Angled Screen] is selected for the [Halftone].)**

6. **Perform [Calibration Settings].**

   (1) **Click [Print Chart] under [Category]>[Calibration Settings], then click [Print].**

   Check whether the media loaded in the printer is large enough for the displayed page size.

   The following message appears: [**The following job will be printed. Do you want to continue?**]

   (2) **Specify the queue folder to add the job to.**

   (3) **Click [OK] .**

   The swatch used for density measurement is printed.

   The swatch pattern varies depending on the selected measurement instrument.

(4) **Prepare for calibrating the measurement instrument.**

(5) **Click [Measure Chart] under [Category]>[Calibration Settings], then click [Calibrate].**

The measurement instrument is calibrated.

(6) **Set the swatch used for density measurement that was printed in (3) on the measurement instrument, and then click [Measure].**

(7) **Follow the on-screen instructions to start the measurement.**

(8) **When the measurement is finished, click to save the measurement results.**

The [**Save As**] window appears.

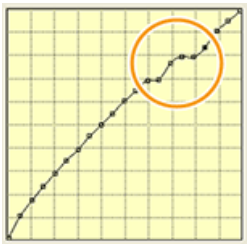
(9) **Enter the file name, then select labt file for [File type] and click [Save...].**

(10) **Click [Fine Tune and Apply] under [Category]>[Calibration Settings].**

(11) **Select [Channel], and then check the density curve for each measurement data channel.**

(12) **If the slopes of the density curves are always positive, click [Apply].**

(13) **If the slope of any portion of a density curve is zero or negative as shown in the figure, adjust the curve so that its slope is always positive, and then click [Apply].**



(14) **To adjust the curve, click the [Output] value that you want to adjust, and then overwrite the density (percentage) value.**

7. **Set the [Total Ink Limit].**

(1) **Click [Print Chart] under [Category]>[Total Ink Limit], then click [Print].**

The following message appears: [**The following job will be printed. Do you want to continue?**] Check whether the media loaded in the printer is large enough for the displayed page size.

(2) **Click [OK] .**

The ink limit chart is printed.

(3) **Check for oversaturation, bleeding, and ink drying on the printed chart to determine the total ink limit.**

(4) **Click [Set Ink Limit] under [Category]>[Total Ink Limit], and then enter the total ink limit that you determined in the previous step into [Total Ink].**

8. **Click [OK] .**

The display of the window changes.

9. **Click [OK].**

A confirmation window appears to confirm that you want to apply the changes.

10. **Click [Yes].**

The settings of the new media are saved.

IMPORTANT

Be sure to click [**Yes**]. Clicking [**No**] closes the window without saving the settings of the new media.



Step 3: Create a Profile

Step 3: Create a Profile

Use profile creation software and create an ICC profile.

Procedure

1. **Create an ICC profile.**

   For information on how to create profiles and on how to operate the profile creation software, refer to the instruction manual of your software.

2. **Save the created ICC profile to the desired location.**

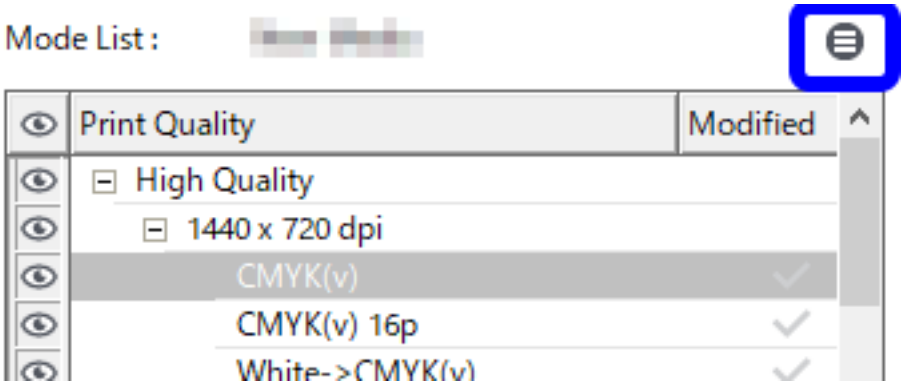
Step 4: Register a Profile

Step 4: Register a Profile

Follow the procedure below to register the created profile as the default profile.

Procedure

1. **Click [Media]>[Media Explorer] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Media Explorer**] window appears.
2. **Select the new media you added in Step 1: Create New Media(P. 324).**
3. **Select the printing quality mode that will be used for the selected media from the [Mode List].**
4. **Click** .



   The display of the window changes.
5. **Click [Select Profile] under [Profile Settings].**
6. **Click** , **and then select the profile you saved in Step 3: Create a Profile(P. 328).**
7. **Click [Open].**
8. **Click [OK].**

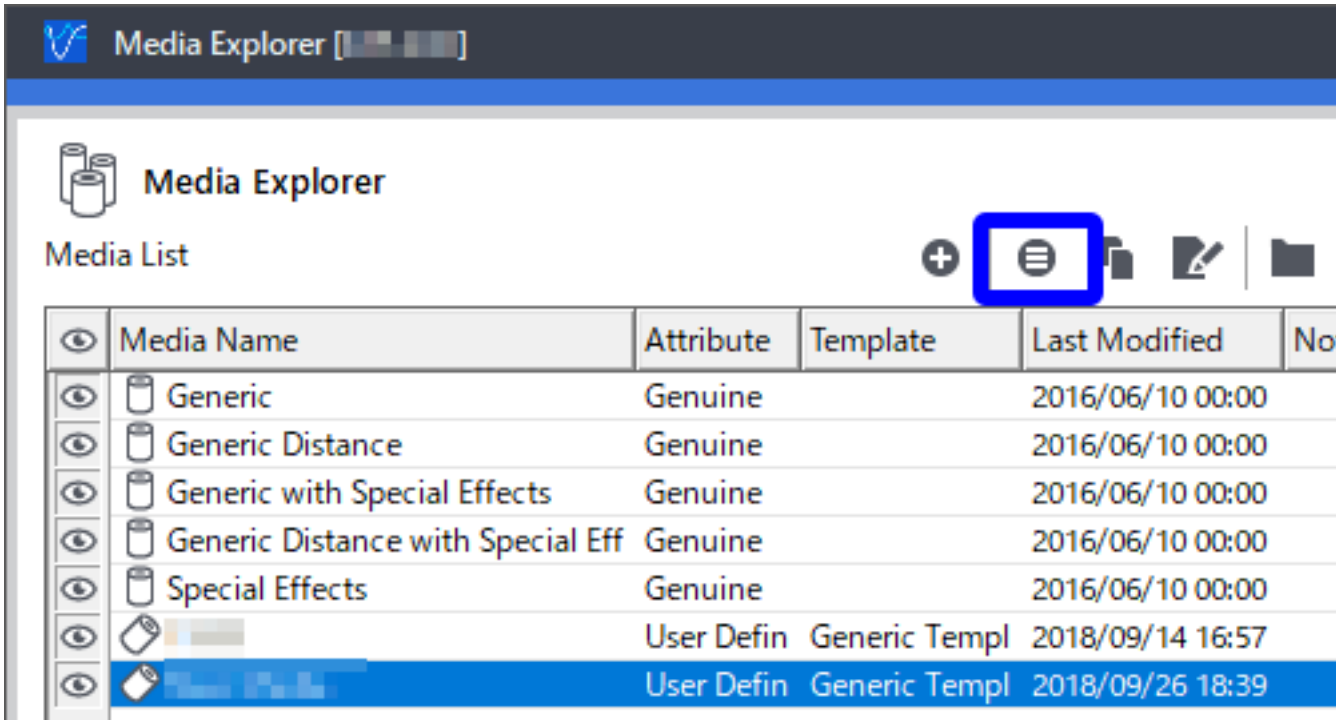
Step 5: Configure the Default Printer Control Settings

Step 5: Configure the Default Printer Control Settings

Follow the procedure below if you want to configure the default printer control settings applied when you print or cut the selected media on your printer.

Procedure

1. Click .



The display of the window changes.

2. **Configure the [Media Settings].**

   For the items below, apply the settings that are recommended for the media.

   These settings are applied when you select [**Use Default Media Settings**] with [**Printer Controls**] in the [**Queue Properties**] window or the [**Job Settings**] window. For the setting method, see Printer Control Settings(P. 104).

   - [**Feed Calibration Controls**]
     - [**Overprint**]

       Select this to perform overprinting.
     - [**Feed Calibration**]

       Enter the media feed calibration value that is appropriate for the selected media. To enter this value, the feed calibration value must be measured on the printer. For information on how to measure the feed calibration, refer to the instruction manual of your printer.
     - [**Change Calibration For All Models**]

       Only when there are series models (for example, the SOLJET PRO2V series), you can change the feed calibration value when using the selected media with another series model.
   - [**Other Controls**]
     - [**Vacuum Power**]

       Set the intensity of the vacuum that holds the media flat on the platen.

- [Dry Time]

  Set the time (in minutes) to wait before printing the next page or cutting.

- [Head Height]

  Set the height of the print head.

- [Heater Controls]

  Configure the temperature settings of the preheater, print heater, and dryer. Clearing these options will set the default settings to off when printing. The devices that can be set vary depending on the printer.

3. **As necessary configure the [Cut Controls] setting.**

4. **If you want to print and cut or just cut the selected media, click [Cut Controls], and then select the [Enable Cutting] check box.**

MEMO

Deselecting [**Enable Cutting**] disables [**Cut Controls**] in the [**Queue Properties**] window and the [**Job Settings**] window, which makes it impossible to set cutting.

5. **For the items below, apply the settings that are recommended for the media.**

- [Cut Passes]

  Enter the number of cutting passes for each cutting line. Increase the value for media that is difficult to cut.

- [Cutting Speed]

  Enter the movement speed of the blade (the cutting speed) in cm/s.

- [Cutting Force]

  Enter the blade force in units of gram-force.

- [Blade Offset]

  Enter the blade offset value (the offset value from the center of the blade to the tip of the blade) in millimeters.

Step 6: Finalize the Registration of the New Media

Step 6: Finalize the Registration of the New Media

After you have configured all the settings, save the settings and exit.

Procedure

1. **Click [OK].**
   The window changes to [**Media Explorer**].

2. **Click [OK].**
   A confirmation window appears to confirm that you want to apply the changes.

3. **Click [Yes].**
   The changed media settings are saved.

   IMPORTANT

   Be sure to click [**Yes**]. Clicking [**No**] closes the window without saving the changes to the media settings.

Using Existing Media

Customizing Media 334
Using Media [**Color Settings**] 335
Saving the Media File 337
Using an Existing Media File 338
    Importing Media Files into VersaWorks..... 338
Loading Saved Media Files 339
Deleting the Media 340

Customizing Media

In VersaWorks, various media settings (print quality for each mode, total number of paths, dot types, total ink amount, printer profiles, etc.) are registered for each printer. You can create custom media by editing these settings after duplicating one of the existing types of media. You can edit new or existing media without duplicating it if [**Media List**]>[**Attribute**] is set to [**User Defined**] in the [**Media Explorer**] window for the media.

Procedure

1. **Select the printer, and then click [Media]>[Media Explorer].**

2. **Select the name of the media to edit from the [Media List].**

   If [**Media List**]>[**Attribute**] is set to [**Genuine**], use the following procedure to duplicate the media.

   (1) **Select the media to duplicate.**

   (2) **Click or right-click and select [Copy Media].**

   The [**Copy Media**] window appears.

   (3) **Enter the desired media name, and then click [OK].**

   The media is duplicated, and the changed media name is added to the [**Media List**].

3. **Select the media name to edit, and then double-click the print mode to edit in the [Mode List].**

   - **Modes with three layers for layered jobs**

     The window for selecting [**Quality Settings**] or [**Color Settings**] appears. Select one of these options and click [**Next**].

     If you select [**Color Settings**], use the [**Layer**] to select the layer to edit, and then configure the [**Color Settings**].

   - **Other modes**

     The window changes.

4. **Change the [Quality Settings] or [Color Settings] ([Calibration Settings], [Total Ink Limit], and [Profile Settings]).**

5. **Click [OK] to close the settings window.**

6. **In the [Media Explorer] window, click [OK] again.**

   A window appears to confirm that you want to apply the changes. To do so, click [**Yes**].

   The customized media is saved.

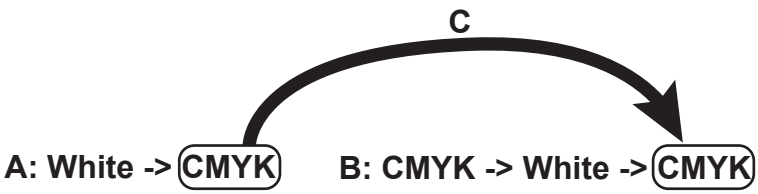
The customized media can now be selected from [**Job Settings**]>[**Quality**]>[**Media Type**].

Using Media [Color Settings]

You can export the [**Color Settings**] of existing media to import these settings for use in editable media. The items that can be used are as follows.

- [**Calibration Settings**]>[**Fine Tune and Apply**]: [**Single Color Limit**] and [**Output**]
- [**Total Ink Limit**]>[**Set Ink Limit**]: [**Total Ink**]
- [**Profile Settings**]>[**Select Profile**]: [**Printer Profile**]

As an example, this section provides the procedure for reusing the CMYK [**Color Settings**] of an existing piece of media (Mode: White->CMYK) for the CMYK of the third layer of a piece of layering media (Mode: CMYK->White->CMYK).



A	Reused media: Mode: White->CMYK*1
B	Media to which reused settings will be applied: Mode: CMYK->White->CMYK
C	Reused items: [**Calibration Settings**], [**Total Ink Limit**], and [**Profile Settings**] in [**Color Settings**]

*1 If the ink mode of the reused media is White->CMYKOrRe, CMYKOrRe will also be applied to the target media.

Procedure

1. **Select the printer, and then click [Media]>[Media Explorer].**

2. **Duplicate the existing media (which has Mode: White->CMYK) to reuse.**
   (1) **Select the existing media (which has Mode: White->CMYK).**
   (2) **Click or right-click the existing media and select [Copy Media].**
   (3) **Enter the desired media name, and then click [OK].**
   The media is duplicated, and the changed media name is added to the [**Media List**].

3. **Select the duplicated media, and then double-click the ink mode to duplicate in the [Mode List].**
   The window changes.

4. **Click to export the settings.**

   MEMO
   The file is saved with the .rccs extension.

   The window for selecting the folder in which to save the file appears. Save the file in the desired folder.

5. **In the [Media Explorer] window, select the layering media to which reused settings will be applied.**

6. **Double-click the ink mode (CMYK->White->CMYK) in the [Mode List].**
   The [**Print Mode Settings**] window appears.

7. **Select [Color Settings], and then select [3. CMYK] from the drop-down list of layers.**

8. **Click [Next].**

9. **Click , and then import the [Color Settings] saved in Step 4.**

   The message [**There are profiles that are already installed. Click "Yes" to overwrite the existing profiles. Click "No" to import the color settings only. Do you want to continue?**] appears. Select [**No**].

   The CMYK [**Color Settings**] of the existing piece of media (Mode: White->CMYK) are applied to the third layer of the piece of layering media (Mode: CMYK->White->CMYK).

Saving the Media File

Save the selected media as a Roland media file (rml file).

Procedure

1. **Click [Media]>[Media Explorer] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Media Explorer**] window appears.

2. **Select the media to be saved.**
   When saving multiple media, perform one of the following operations to select multiple media:
   - While holding down the shift key, click the first media, and then click the last media.
   - While holding down the ctrl key, click the jobs one by one.

3. **Click**  **.**
   The [**Export Media**] window appears.

4. **Select the media to be saved.**
   The selected media is highlighted. To cancel the selection, click the media again.

5. **Click [OK] .**
   The [**Save As**] window appears.

6. **Enter the file name, and then click [Save...].**
   The selected media is saved as an rml file.

   MEMO

   If you select the [**Exclude invisible information**] check box in the [**Export Media**] window, the file will be saved without including the non-recommended mode information.

Using an Existing Media File

This section explains how to use existing media files with VersaWorks. Media files can be either downloaded and imported in VersaWorks or manually imported (for media files obtained separately). For instructions on how to import files manually, refer to Loading Saved Media Files(P. 339).

Importing Media Files into VersaWorks

Download media files and import them into VersaWorks. To perform this operation, verify that the computer on which VersaWorks is installed is connected to the Internet.

The media files will be determined according to the model and ink type. Select the printer in VersaWorks, and then select the media files to be imported.

This operation requires a Roland DG Connect account.

Procedure

1. **Select the printer for which the files will be imported.**
2. **Click [Media]>[Media Explorer] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Media Explorer**] window appears.
3. **Click**  .
4. **Sign in with your Roland DG Connect account.**
   The [**Download Media**] window appears for the model selected in Step 1.
5. **Select [Ink Type] and [RIP].**
   - [Ink Type]: The ink types for the model selected in Step 1
   - [RIP]: VersaWorks 6.x
6. **Select the media to download the media files.**
7. **Close the window after downloading completes.**
8. **The [This will start the importing of the downloaded media. Do you want to continue?] dialog box is displayed. Click [Yes].**
9. **When the downloaded media files are displayed, click [OK].**
   The media files will be added to the media list in [**Media Explorer**].

Loading Saved Media Files

Load a Roland media file (rml file) or compressed media file (zip file) into the [**Media Explorer**] window.

Procedure

1. **Click [Media]>[Media Explorer] on the menu bar.**

   The [**Media Explorer**] window appears.

2. **Click .**

   The [**Load from File**] window appears.

3. **Select the rml file or zip file to be loaded, and then click [Open].**

   The [**Import Media**] window appears.

4. **If the rml file includes the information of multiple media, select the media to be loaded from the list, and then click [OK].**

   The selected media is registered to the [**Media Explorer**] window.

5. **Click [OK].**

   If you click [**Cancel**], the window is closed and the registration of the media is canceled.

   MEMO

   You cannot load media if another media with the same name has already been registered.

Deleting the Media

Delete the selected media from the [**Media Explorer**] window.

Procedure

1. **Click [Media]>[Media Explorer] on the menu bar.**
   The [**Media Explorer**] window appears.

2. **Select the media to be deleted.**
   Perform one of the following operations to select multiple media:
   - While holding down the shift key, click the first media, and then click the last media.
   - While holding down the ctrl key, click the jobs one by one.

   MEMO
   You cannot delete media that has the [**Genuine**] attribute.

3. **Click**  **.**
   The [**Delete Media**] window appears.

4. **Select the media to be deleted, and then click [OK].**
   The selected media is deleted.

5. **Click [OK] .**

   IMPORTANT
   Be sure to click [**OK**]. If you click [**Cancel**], the window is closed and the deletion of the media is canceled.

Appendix

Function List

Menu Bar List 343
- [File] 343
- [Edit] 344
- [View] 348
- [Job] 349
- [Printer] 351
- [Media] 352
- [Help] 353

[Job Settings] List 354
- [Layout] 354
- [Quality] 356
- [Color Adjustment] 362
- [File Format] 363
- [Mark] 365
- [Printer Controls] 366
- [Cut Controls] 369
- [Job Management] 371
- [Clip and Tile] 373
- [Variable Data] 375
- [Special Color] 377
- [Customize] 378

Menu Bar List

This is a list of items in the menu bar that is displayed at the top of the VersaWorks window.

[File]

Item	Description	Refer to
[**Add Job to Queue Folder**]	Follow the procedure below to add data to print to the job list (the queue folder). First select the printer to print from. Next, when the folder to add is selected with [**File**]>[**Add Job to Queue Folder**], the data is added. You can also add jobs to the job list by dragging the icon for the print data to the job list.	P. 61 Add Print Data to the Job List
[**Exit**]	Exit VersaWorks.	

[Edit]

Item	Description	Refer to
[Queue Settings]	Use this window to set the initial values of the queue folder printing settings. The settings in this window will be applied to all corresponding queue folders unless the settings are changed in the [Job Settings] window.	P. 20 [**Queue Properties**] Window
[Spot Color Settings]	A list of the preset spot color library names (Roland spot colors, DIC, TOYO, PANTONE) is displayed. With VersaWorks, spot colors other than Roland spot colors are replaced with CMYK for printing. You can create, delete, and duplicate spot color libraries, and can assign and convert spot colors.	P. 224 Using Spot Colors
[Special Color Settings]	Displays a list of special color library names. Detects the specific colors in a job by color value (RGB or CMYK) and replaces them with color values defined in VersaWorks.	P. 273 Using Special Colors
[Printer Color Match Settings]	Adjust for variation in the output colors resulting from changes over time with the same model or from individual differences with different machines of the same model.	
[Simulation Profile Management]	Configures a profile to match the output colors of different printer models.	P. 131 Customizing the Color Settings
[Nearest Color Finder Library]	The [**Nearest Color Finder Library**] list appears. You can delete unnecessary results.	P. 251 Managing the [**Nearest Color Finder Library**]
[Preferences]	This is composed of 5 tabs ([**General**], [**Measurement Instrument**], [**Roland@NET**], [**Multiple Printer Support**], and [**Linking**]), and configures settings for the entire application.	P. 134 Matching Different Printer Output Colors
[General]	Configures general settings such as [**Language and Unit**] and [**Preview**].	
[Language and Unit]	You can set the language and unit to display in VersaWorks. After the language is changed, you have to restart VersaWorks.	P. 30 Setting the Language, Font Size, and Unit
[Language]	Select the display language from [English], [Chinese_Simplified], [Chinese_Traditional], [French], [German], [Italian], [Japanese], [Korean], [Portuguese], [Spanish], [Russian], [Turkish], or [Arabic]. Default value: Language selected at the time of installation	
[Unit]	Select the display unit from [**mm**], [**cm**], and [**inch**]. Default value: [**mm**]	
[Font Size]	Select [**Large**], [**Standard**], or [**Small**]. Default value: [**Standard**]	
[Preview]	You can select the quality of the preview image from [**High Quality**], [**Standard Quality**], and [**Low Quality**]. Default value: [**Standard Quality**]	P. 394 Different Monitor Colors and Printed Colors
[Quality]		

Item	Description	Refer to
[Enable Monitor Proofing]	When this check box is selected, the colors in the preview display will be closer to those in the printed materials. Default value: Cleared	
[RGB Profile]	Use the [AdobeRGB1998.icc], [Roland_SignRGB.icc], [sRGB Color Space Profile.icm], and [Roland_DG_WideGamut_RGB.icc] RGB profiles to display the preview with colors that closely approximate the actual output colors.	
[Input Folder]	You can display the queue folders (A - E) in the layout area. Default value: Selected	P. 34 Hiding the Queue Folder Identification in the Layout Window
[Show Queue Identifier in Layout Window]		
[Processing Speed Settings]	When multiple printers are connected to VersaWorks, you can set the number of RIP processing operations to perform simultaneously. Default value: 1 (when only one printer is registered) or 2 (when multiple printers are registered)	P. 31 Setting the Number of Simultaneous RIP Processing Operations
[Max. # of concurrent RIP processes]		
[Print Options]	Sets the print count and the warning when the amount of remaining ink is low.	
[Configure Advanced Print Settings]	When this check box is cleared, the specified job is printed only once at all times without specifying the print count. Default value: Selected	P. 35 Printing Only Once at All Times
[Display warning according to the amount of ink remaining when printing]	When this check box is selected, you can configure the settings so that a warning is displayed if the amount of remaining ink is low when you attempt to print. Default value: Selected	P. 36 Setting Warning Displays According to the Amount of Remaining Ink
[Adjust Amount of Memory Used in RIP]	Adjusts the amount of the computer's memory that is used during processing by the RIP, output, and job importing. Default value: 1024 MB	P. 33 Increasing Memory
[Measurement Instrument]	Sets the type of measurement instrument to use in [For Color Charts], [For Spot and Special Colors], and [For Printer Color Matching].	P. 37 Setting the Measurement Instrument to Use
[For Color Charts]	Specifies the model to use when creating and registering new media. Select from [X-Rite i1Pro / Pro 2 / Pro 3], [X-Rite i1Pro 3 Plus], [X-Rite i1iO / iO 2 / iO 3], [X-Rite i1iO 3 Plus], [X-Rite i1iSis], [Barbieri Spectro LFP qb], and [Barbieri Spectro pad]. Default value: [X-Rite i1Pro / Pro 2 / Pro 3]	
[For Spot and Special Colors]	Specifies the model to use when creating or adjusting a spot color or special color to reproduce the desired color. Select from [X-Rite i1Pro / Pro 2 / Pro 3], [X-Rite i1Pro 3 Plus], [Barbieri Spectro LFP qb Spectral unit], and [Barbieri Spectro pad]. Default value: [X-Rite i1Pro / Pro 2 / Pro 3]	

Item	Description	Refer to
[For Printer Color Matching]	Specifies the model to use for the printer color match function that matches output colors which are slightly different with each printer. Select either **[Use For Color Charts]** or **[VW-S1]**. Default value: **[Use For Color Charts]**	
[Roland@NET]	Sets the software update method.	
[Check for Updates Automatically and Notify]	When this check box is selected, notification of update information is provided. Default value: Selected	P. 42 Using the Latest Version of VersaWorks
[Update Settings]	Sets the frequency for acquiring update information. Default value: **[Every Launch]**	P. 43 Performing Updates According to Their Details
[Every Launch]		
[Every Day]		
[Every Week]		
[Every Month]		
[Proxy Server]	When a proxy server is required in order to connect to the Internet, configure the settings here. Default value: Cleared	P. 45 Step 1: Enter the proxy server settings.
[Use Proxy Server]		
[IP Address]		
[Port]		
[Update Options]	Sets the update details.	P. 45 Step 2: Set the update details.
[Download Updates for ALL Languages]	Downloads updates for all languages (recommended). Default value: Selected	
[Download Media and Color Profiles]	Allows the download conditions to be selected (recommended). Default value: **[ALL Available Updates]**	
[ALL Available Updates]	The data for all printers and for all ink configurations supported by VersaWorks will be updated (recommended).	
[Only for the Current Printer Model in Use]	The data for the current printer model and for all ink configurations supported by this model will be updated.	
[Only for the Current Printer Model and Ink Type]	Only the data for the current printer model and ink configuration will be updated.	
[Multiple Printer Support]	Sets the job display and the number of printers where output will be performed simultaneously.	
[Layout Window Settings]	Displays the jobs for all registered printers in the job list and layout window. Select **[Show Jobs for Selected Printer Only]** if the monitor is small and hard to see. Default value: **[Show Jobs for All Printers]**	
[Show Jobs for All Printers]		
[Use the Same Scale for All Printers]		
[Show Jobs for Selected Printer Only]		

Item	Description	Refer to
[Output Settings]	Sets the number of printers where output will be performed simultaneously. Default value: 1	P. 32 Setting the Number of Simultaneous Printing Operations
[Max. # of Concurrent Outputs]		
[Linking]	Links with external applications. Default value: Selected	P. 39 Checking the Link Settings with External Applications
[Link with External Application]		

[View]

Sets the configuration of the VersaWorks top menu. By default, [**Preview Window**], [**Layout Window**], and [**Status Bar**] are displayed.

Item	Description	Refer to
[**Preview Window**]	Shows/hides the preview area.	P. 24 4. Preview Area
[**Layout Window**]	Shows/hides the layout area.	P. 25 5. Layout area
[**Status Bar**]	Shows/hides the [**Status Bar**].	P. 26 6. Status bar
[**Job Log**]	Click this item to display the [**Job Log**] window.	P. 89 View the Job Log Information

[Job]

Use this when a job is selected. The same menu can be accessed by right-clicking on a job. However, the items differ when a variation job is selected.

Item	Description	Refer to
[Edit Design]	-	
[Step & Repeat]	Prints a single image (job) side by side on the media. You can also select a part of the image and print it side by side or shift the image in the vertical or horizontal direction.	P. 186 Printing a Single Image Side by Side: [**Step & Repeat**]
[Job Assistant]	You can add a cutting line or spot color plate to print data that was registered as a job, or configure layer settings. However, Job Assistant must already be installed when VersaWorks is installed. It is enabled for PDF jobs only.	• P. 290 Creating with Job Assistant • P. 264 Spot Color Plate Generation with Job Assistant
[Generate Variation Job]	This can be used to generate a job whose settings change in small increments (a variation job), output this job, and evaluate the output results of multiple generated variation jobs to quickly approach the desired quality. Default value: [**Compare Quality Settings**]	P. 190 Printing While Changing Settings in Small Increments: [**Variation Job**]
[Preset]	The Job Settings window appears. The same occurs when you click  at the bottom of the job area.	P. 354 [**Job Settings**] List
[RIP]	Performs processing by the RIP. The same occurs when you click  at the bottom of the job area. While processing by the RIP is in progress, you can check the status under "RIP Status" in the job area.	P. 70 Performing Only Processing by the RIP
[Print]	Set the print count and click [Print] to print. The same occurs when you click  at the bottom of the job area.	P. 66 Step 3: Outputting
[Nest]	Select 2 or more jobs and select [**Nest**] to create a nested job. [**Nest**] arranges multiple jobs to minimize the total media usage. The same occurs when you click  at the bottom of the job area.	P. 146 Creating a Nested Job from the Selected Jobs
[Compose]	This function is enabled only with a UV printer. It combines multiple TIFF file jobs and outputs them in grayscale using spot color ink.	P. 219 Composing TIFF Image Print Data: [**Compose Job**]
[Grouping]	This section explains how to group multiple jobs and thereby output them with a single operation.	P. 152 Outputting Multiple Jobs at Once
[Generate Layered Job]	A layered job is one in which multiple jobs are layered on top of each other. With a layered job, multiple jobs can be layered and printed with a single printing operation.	P. 216 Printing Multiple Jobs Layered on Top of Each Other: [**Layered Job**]
[Duplicate]	Specifies the job duplication method.	

Item		Description	Refer to
	[Duplicate Job]	Duplicates a job.	P. 171 Duplicating Jobs
	[UV Illumination Job]	This section explains how to duplicate a job to add a job that performs only UV lamp illumination.	P. 114 Adding Jobs That Perform Only UV Lamp Illumination after Printing
[Copy/Paste Setting Value]		The detailed settings of a given job (job A) can be used with a different job (job B) that already exists in the list.	P. 168 Using Job Printing Settings with Other Jobs
	[Copy]	Copies the detailed settings of a given job (job A).	
	[Paste]	Pastes job setting values to a different job (job B).	
	[Save as Printing Settings File]	Saves the printing settings of the selected job to a file.	P. 169 Saving the Printing Settings of the Job
	[Apply Printing Settings File]	Applies to the job the printing settings file selected to be loaded.	P. 170 Loading Files to Use Printing Settings with Other Jobs
[Rename]		Changes the job name.	
[Save...]		Saves only the printing settings information of the job (such as the job's source data information, the media width, the number of copies to print, and the profile) as a file. The same occurs when you click  at the bottom of the job area.	P. 156 Saving a VW Job File
[Cancel]		Cancels printing and processing by the RIP. The same occurs when you click  at the bottom of the job area.	P. 83 Canceling Processing by the RIP and Printing
[Clear]		Deletes intermediate files of a job (data that has been processed by the RIP and files whose setting details have been saved). When intermediate files are deleted, the registered job returns to the state that was preset with [Edit]>[Input Folder]. The same occurs when you click  at the bottom of the job area.	P. 87 Deleting the Intermediate Files of a Job
[Delete]		Deletes the selected job. The same occurs when you click  at the bottom of the job area.	P. 87 Deleting Jobs
[Nearest Color Finder]		If a spot color is not output as intended because the media or machine has been changed, adjust the output color of the spot color. First, print the chart of the colors nearest to the spot color used in the job. The chart can be used to find the desired color and apply it to adjust the color to the intended output.	P. 248 Adjusting the Output Color of a Spot Color: [Nearest Color Finder]

[Printer]

Item	Description	Refer to
[Printer Settings]	Used when connecting a printer. The list of connected printers is displayed, and the [Nickname], [Ink Type], and [Port] can be set for each one. You can use [Search for Printers] to search for printers on the local network.	
[Verify]	Displays the status of the following items for the printer selected in the list. • Model Name • Firmware Version • Serial Number • Status	
[Advanced]	Partially restricts the print heads to use for printing (i.e. prevent the use of the print heads that are causing discharge issues). This operation is called the "nozzle mask," and while more time is required to complete the printing, it allows you to decrease the impact of dot drop-out or dot displacement.	Depending on the model, this operation may be described in the User's Manual.
[Printer Status]	Displays the information of the printer that was selected on the Top Page. The information which can be displayed is as shown below. Depending on the model you are using, some items may not be displayed. • Model Name • Port • Firmware Version • Serial Number • Status • Media Name • Media Width • Media Length • Table Height • Rotary Mode • Ink Status	P. 28 Checking the Printer Connection and Status
[Update]	Can be used to check the amount of remaining ink.	
[Test Print]	Performs a test print of the job designated by VersaWorks. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added.	P. 59 Test Printing from VersaWorks
[Test Cut]	Performs a test cut of the data designated by VersaWorks after test printing.	P. 319 Perform Test Cutting
[Send Native File to Printer]	Printing is performed using a PRT native file (file where data that was processed by the RIP is saved).	P. 162 Printing Using a PRT Native File

[Media]

Item		Description
[**Media Explorer**]		Manages information about the media used for printing in the [Media Explorer] window.
[**Print Roland System Color Library**]		Prints the color system library. Color samples of other metallic inks: Metallic Color System Library, orange ink color samples: Orange Color System Library, green ink color samples: Green Color System Library, red ink color samples: Red Color System Library.
[**Color Chart Type-1**]		Prints the Color Chart. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added. The Color Chart is a chart that categorizes the colors in the library by saturation, and arranges them to vary in hue in the horizontal direction and in brightness in the vertical direction. To print this color chart in its original size, you need A1-size or larger media. Select Type-1 or Type-2.
[**Color Chart Type-2**]		
[**Color Selector**]		Prints [**Color Selector**]. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added. The Color Selector is the ink combination chart. The chart shows the ink combination used for printing each spot color. Although each page is printed in A4 size, you can cut the pieces along the trimming marks and bind them in numeric order (outline numbers) to create a color sample book that can be used to compare the colors.
[**Color Chips**]		Prints 12 color chips per color for 5 colors in A4 size. The colors are categorized by color tone. Click [**Color Chips**] and click the tone name to print the color chips for the selected tone. With printers that are equipped with a cutting function, cutting is performed for each color to create a seal color sample book.
	[**Pure Color 1**]	Prints [**Pure Color 1**]. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added.
	[**Pure Color 2**]	Prints [**Pure Color 2**]. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added.
	[**Strong**]	Prints [**Strong**]. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added.
	[**Deep**]	Prints [**Deep**]. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added.
	[**Dark**]	Prints [**Dark**]. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added.
	[**Dark Grayish**]	Prints [**Dark Grayish**]. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added.
	[**Black**]	Prints [**Black**]. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added.
[**Print Roland Texture System Library**]		Gloss ink texture samples: Prints the Texture System Library. Texture samples of other metallic inks: Metallic Texture System Library.
[**Chart**]		Prints [**Chart**]. The queue folder where this job is saved can be specified in the location where the job is added.

[Help]

Item	Description
[**Show Help**]	Displays the user's manual. There are limits to this manual's functions when it is viewed offline, so it is recommended that you view it online.
[**Quick Tour**]	Starts the [**Quick Tour**] function. The [**Quick Tour**] function explains the default settings and other basic VersaWorks operations.
[**VersaWorks Online**]	Displays the support site for all VersaWorks including old VersaWorks versions and VersaWorks Dual.
[**Manual Library**]	Opens the [**Manual Library**] website for downloading software and viewing manuals.
[**Roland DG Connect**]	Opens the [**Roland DG Connect**] website, which provides functions and services for bidirectional sharing of information such as for printer operation management.
[**About VersaWorks**]	Displays the VersaWorks version information.
[**System Information...**]	Displays the VersaWorks system information.

[Job Settings] List

This is a list of [**Job Settings**] items. Depending on the model you are using and the print data, some items may not be displayed. The items which cannot be selected may vary depending on the job, other selected items, and other factors.

[Layout]

Configures the settings related to the printing area and job layout. The items that can be selected vary depending on the model.

Item	Description	Refer to
[**Media Settings**]	Sets the media size. Default value: [**CustomROLL**]	
[**Size**]	Selects the media type.	P. 94 Set the size of the material.
[**Get Media Width**]	Information about the printable area is acquired from the printer and [**W**] is set automatically. On the flat table model, [**W**] and [**H**] are set automatically.	
[**W**]	[**W**] is set manually.	
[**H**]	[**H**] is set manually. This can be set when sheet media is selected.	
[**Scaling**]	These settings are used for printing with the job enlarged or reduced. Default value: 100%	P. 95 Scaling Jobs for Printing
[**Scale**]	Enlarges or reduces the job by the specified scaling factor.	
[**W**]	Enlarges or reduces the job to the specified size. Entering one value will automatically set the other one. The horizontal to vertical ratio cannot be changed.	
[**H**]		
[**Fit to Media Size**]	Automatically enlarges or reduces the job to match the paper size set in [**Media Settings**]. The scaling factor changes depending on the job orientation specified with [**Orientation**] under [**Media Settings**]. The horizontal to vertical ratio cannot be changed.	
[**Position**]	Sets the job printing position.	P. 96 Setting the Printing Position
[**X**]	The job is moved by the specified offset in relation to the upper-left corner (origin) of the media in the preview image (the lower-right corner of the set media). [**X**] sets the right distance and [**Y**] sets the downward distance.	
[**Y**]		
[**Center on the Media**]	When using roll media, the job is moved to the horizontal center of the media. When using sheet media or standard-size media, the job is moved to the horizontal and vertical center of the media.	
[**Print Quality**]	Sets the number of copies to print, print spacing, image mirror, and printing direction.	
[**Copy**]	Sets the number of copies to print. Default value: 1	P. 97 Setting the Number of Copies to Print

Item	Description	Refer to
[Page Range]	Specifies the page to print when printing print data that is composed of multiple pages.	
[from]		
[to]		
[Tile Spacing]	You can set the spacing between adjacent images when tiling and printing multiple images. Default value: [**Equal X and Y Spacing**] (Flat table model: [**Grid Spacing**])	P. 98 Setting the Spacing from the Adjacent Image
[Equal X and Y Spacing]	Specifies the spacing between adjacent images. The same value is specified for the vertical and horizontal spacings.	
[Separate X and Y Spacing]	Specifies the spacing between adjacent images. Different values are specified for the vertical and horizontal spacings.	
[Grid Spacing]	Specifies the value that is the addition of the image size and the spacing between adjacent images. The width and height values can be specified separately.	
[Spacing]	Displayed when [**Equal X and Y Spacing**] is selected. Default value: 4 mm (0.16 in.)	
[X]	Displayed when [**Separate X and Y Spacing**] is selected.	
[Y]		
[W]	Displayed when [**Grid Spacing**] is selected.	
[H]		
[Mirror]	Reverses the image when printing. This is set in cases such as printing on transparent media when the image will be viewed from the opposite side of the printed surface.	P. 100 Mirroring the Image
[Orientation]	Specifies the direction of the printed image. Dark gray indicates a selectable direction, and the selected print direction is displayed in blue.	P. 101 Rotating the Image

[Quality]

Configures the job print quality and color management settings.

Item	Description	Refer to
[Quality Settings]	Sets the printing quality in detail.	
[Media Type]	Sets the media type.	
[Print Quality]	Select the printing quality. This determines the resolution. The resolution is displayed according to the model. Default value: [**Standard**]	
[Artistic]		
[High Quality]		
[Standard]		
[High Speed]		
[Draft]		
[Resolution]	This is decided according to the selected [**Media Type**] and [**Print Quality**].	
[Mode]	The selectable items vary depending on the machine ink type and the selected [**Media Type**] and [**Print Quality**]. This lists the items for CMYK inks and spot color inks. The "p" in items such as "6p" and "8p" means "passes." When the number of passes is higher, the print head performs a larger number of passes for the same image. This results in finer drawing and improves image quality, however it increases the printing time. (v) prints in variable dot modes (modes that use dots of varying sizes).	
CMYK(v)	This prints using CMYK inks only.	
CMYK(v) 16p		
White->CMYK(v)	This prints first with Wh ink followed by CMYK inks. This allows printing that is not affected by the media color, such as with transparent media.	
CMYK->White(v)	This prints first with CMYK inks followed by Wh ink. This is used in cases such as printing on transparent media when the image will be viewed from the opposite side of the printed surface.	
White(v)	This prints using Wh ink only.	
White(v) HD	This prints with higher density Wh ink compared to White.	
CMYK->MatteVarnish(v)	Printing with CMYK inks and gloss ink is performed in a single pass. The CMYK color inks are overprinted by the gloss ink. The gloss ink has a matte finish.	
CMYK->MatteVarnish(v) 16p		
GlossVarnish(v)	This performs gloss-finish printing with gloss ink. Overprinting with gloss ink is performed after printing with Wh ink and CMYK inks is completed. Printing using only gloss ink is also possible.	
MatteVarnish(v)	This performs matte-finish printing with gloss ink. Overprinting with gloss ink is performed after printing with white ink and CMYK inks is completed. Printing using only gloss ink is also possible.	
MatteVarnish(v) 16p		
Embossing(v)	This performs embossed-finish printing with gloss ink. Embossing with gloss ink is performed after printing with white ink and CMYK inks is completed. The ink thickness is determined by the number in [**Printer Controls**]>[**General**]>[**Use Custom Settings**]>[**Overprint**]. Embossed printing using only gloss ink is also possible.	

Item	Description	Refer to
Primer1(v)	This prints only using the primer. The texture of the finish and ink adhesion are different between Primer 1 and Primer 2. You can also perform printing using Primer 1 and Primer 2 in turns. Overlaying Primer 1 and Primer 2 may result in different effects in the texture or adhesion from the case where they are used individually for printing. The texture and adhesion may vary depending on the media to be used. Select an appropriate type according to their properties.	
Primer2(v)		
Primer->CMYK(v)	Printing with primer ink and CMYK inks is performed in a single pass. The primer ink is overprinted by the CMYK color inks.	
Primer->White(v)	Printing with primer ink and Wh ink is performed in a single pass. The primer ink is overprinted by the white ink. White(v)HD is a mode that has a higher Wh ink density than White(v).	
Primer->White(v)HD		
CMYK-> Wh -> CMYK	Use this item when you want to, for example, print on transparent film and display the printed document from both the printed surface and the opposite surface.	P. 216 Printing Multiple Jobs Layered on Top of Each Other: [Layered Job]
Pr -> Wh -> CMYK	Use this item when you want to, for example, improve the adhesion of ink to media that peels off easily and print vibrant images on a base of white ink.	
Pr -> CMYK -> Wh	Use this item when you want to, for example, improve the adhesion of ink to media that peels off easily, print vibrant images on a base of white ink, and display the images from the surface opposite the printed surface (the transparent surface).	
Wh -> CMYK -> Gl	Use this item when you want to, for example, print images on a base of white ink, eliminate the effect of the media's color, and add textures and other expressions.	
[Details]	Specifies the screen, interpolation, and other advanced settings.	
[Halftone]	Sets the screen (angled screen) shape method.	P. 118 Setting the Halftone
[Dither]	A screening method that uses a specific dithering pattern to yield fast processing by the RIP.	
[Error Diffusion]	Images are printed with finer details. The time required for processing by the RIP is longer than when [Dither] is used.	
[Interpolation]	Sets the interpolation used when scaling an image. Default value: [Nearest Neighbor]	P. 119 Selecting the Interpolation Used for Scaling
[Nearest Neighbor]	Lowest quality, but the processing speed is high.	
[Bi-Linear]	Standard quality and processing speed.	
[Bi-Cubic]	High quality but low processing speed.	
[Direction]	Sets the print direction of the print head.	P. 120 Setting the Direction of the Print Head
[Uni-Direction]	Printing will only be performed in the outbound pass (depending on the model, printing may only be performed in the return pass). Total printing time is longer but the quality is higher.	

Item	Description	Refer to
[Bi-Direction]	When the print head moves, printing will be performed in both the outbound pass and return pass.	
[Ignore Default Settings]	The print head's movement speed and the number of times to perform overprinting can be set. Default value: Cleared	
[Head Speed]	Sets the print head's movement speed during printing.	P. 121 Setting the Print Head Speed
[Overprint]	Sets the number of times to print in the same location.	P. 188 Performing Overprinting: [Overprint]
[Color Management]	Configures the color management initial settings.	P. 125 Selecting the Color Setting from the List
[Preset]	Selects the color setting.	
[True Rich Color]	Despite its high-saturation output, it has a wide color gamut, more naturally producing colors such as gray and peach. [True Rich Color 2] is enabled only for CMYK images. [True Rich Color 3] is enabled for both CMYK and RGB images. [True Rich Color 3] with the broader color gamut is recommended. Select the same color setting when you set [True Rich Color] or [True Rich Color 2] before updating VersaWorks and want to output the same color.	
[True Rich Color 2]		
[True Rich Color 3]		
[Pre-Press General]	Applies the standard settings used for printing in general printing environments.	
[Pre-Press U.S.]	Applies the standard settings used for printing in general printing environments in the United States.	
[Pre-Press EURO]	Applies the standard settings used for printing in general printing environments in Europe.	
[Japan Color]	Applies the standard settings used for printing in general printing environments in Japan.	
[MAX Impact]	Produces vibrant images suitable for signs.	
[Sign & Display]	Does not use the profile embedded in the image data (the profile specified by the image data). You can obtain good results by selecting this setting when you want to print dark colors over the entirety of signs.	
[MAX Density U.S.]	Color conversion just for the illustration is disabled and output is performed as defined in the data. You can obtain good results by selecting this setting when you make the color density a priority.	
[MAX Density Japan]	Color conversion just for the illustration is disabled and output is performed as defined in the data. This setting is almost the same as [MAX Density U.S.], but output is performed while preserving the primary colors.	
[Density Control Only]	Color conversion is disabled and output is performed as defined in the data. The amount of ink is limited, so the ink does not overflow.	
[Custom]	You can select the input profile and the matching method (color conversion) settings individually.	
[Custom High-Performance]	You can select the input profile and the matching method (color conversion) settings individually. This assumes high performance.	
[Full Page Conversion Mode]	Applies the same matching method for both raster and vector objects.	

Item	Description	Refer to
[Quick Setup]	Visually sets the color from seven color settings using [Brightness][Vibrancy].	P. 123 Visually Selecting the Color Settings: [Quick Setup]
[draft]	This is set when you want to assign original settings to Custom or Custom High-Performance (such as applying an original ICC profile registered in simulation profile management).	P. 131 Customizing the Color Settings
[Color Management]	You can also set from this menu by clicking [draft] without selecting [Color Management]>[Settings].	
[Simulation Target Profiles]	Selects the profile to use as the base for the color you want to output.	
RGB	Sets the RGB profile for data created with RGB and ordinary photo data. It is also possible that a single image contains both RGB and CMYK. Default value: Roland_DG_WideGamut_RGB.icc	
[AdobeRGB1998.icc]	Produces most of the RGB color gamut (range.) This setting is suitable for printing images with a wide range of colors.	
[Roland_DG_SignRGB_v2.icc/ Roland_SignRGB.icc]	Produces vibrant images suitable for signs.	
[Roland_DG_WideGamut_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut and high saturation, and produces colors such as gray and peach more naturally.	
[sRGB Color Space Profile.icm]	Produces a color space used for general computer monitors. Compared to AdobeRGB1998, sRGB has a narrow color gamut and produces muted colors.	
[TrueRichColor_BS_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors. Compared with TrueRichColor_BV_RGB, it produces a somewhat more relaxed impression.	
[TrueRichColor_BV_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors with high saturation.	
[TrueRichColor_DS_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors. Compared with TrueRichColor_DV_RGB, it produces a somewhat more relaxed impression.	
[TrueRichColor_DV_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors with high saturation.	
[TrueRichColor_Std_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, while producing natural-looking colors.	
[TrueRichColor_V_RGB.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces colors with higher saturation than TrueRichColor_Std_RGB.	
CMYK	Sets the CYMK profile for data created with CYMK. It is also possible that a single image contains both CMYK and RGB. Default value: RolandWideGamut_CMYK.icc	
[DIC_Standard_Color_SFC_1_0_2.icm]	Applies the DIC standard color, which produces relatively sharp colors.	

Item			Description	Refer to
		[Euroscale-Coated.icc]	Applies the standard color used for offset printing in Europe.	
		[EuroscaleUncoated.icc]		
		[JapanColor2011Coated.icc]	Applies the standard color used for offset printing in Japan, which produces overall deep colors.	
		[JapanColor97.icm]		
		[JapanStandard.icc]	Applies the standard color (based on JapanColor) used for offset printing in Japan, which produces slightly pale colors.	
		[RolandWideGamut2_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut and high saturation, and produces colors such as gray and peach more naturally. If they both appear, select **RolandWideGamut_CMYK 2**, which has a broader color gamut. However before updating VersaWorks, to configure the **RolandWideGamut_CMYK** setting and output the same colors, select **RolandWideGamut_CMYK**.	
		[RolandWideGamut_CMYK.icc]		
		[Roland_DG_Deep_CMYK_1.0.icc]	Produces overall deep-colored images suitable for signs.	
		[Roland_SignCMYK.icc]	Produces vibrant images suitable for signs.	
		[TOYO Offset Coat 1.1.icm]	Applies the Toyo Ink standard color, which produces relatively pale colors.	
		[TrueRichColor_BS_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors. Compared with TrueRichColor_BV_CMYK, it produces a somewhat more relaxed impression.	
		[TrueRichColor_BV_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces bright colors with high saturation.	
		[TrueRichColor_DS_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors. Compared with TrueRichColor_DV_CMYK, it produces a somewhat more relaxed impression.	
		[TrueRichColor_DV_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces darker colors with high saturation.	
		[TrueRichColor_Std_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, while producing natural-looking colors.	
		[TrueRichColor_V_CMYK.icc]	It has a wide color gamut, and produces colors with higher saturation than TrueRichColor_Std_CMYK.	
		[USWebCoatedSWOP.icc / USWebUncoated.icc]	Applies the standard color used for offset printing in the United States.	
	[Matching Method]		Sets the color matching method.	P. 132 Characteristics of Each Matching Method
		[Raster]/[Vector]	Raster data is used for images, and vector data for illustrations. Default value: [**Colorimetric**]	

Item	Description	Refer to
[Perceptual]	Converts colors while maintaining tonal balance. The color values are changed, but their values relative to each other remain the same. This setting is suitable for photographic images.	
[Colorimetric]	Converts colors with emphasis on brightness. A color outside of the printer's color gamut is converted to a close color within the printer's color gamut. Use this option in situations where the color accuracy is emphasized while consideration is given for the white of the paper. In the printing industries in Europe and America, there are cases where this is the standard setting.	
[Saturation]	Converts colors with emphasis on color vibrancy. A color outside of the printer's color gamut is converted to a color with the same saturation within the printer's color gamut. This setting is suitable for printing charts and graphs.	
[Absolute]	This option is not commonly used. Select this setting for special uses such as printing logo colors.	
[Calibration and Ink Limit]	Color conversion is disabled and printing is performed as defined in the data. The total ink is limited by the ink limit settings in the media. Depending on the item selected under [**Color Management**], this may not be displayed.	
[Calibration]	Color conversion is disabled and printing is performed as defined in the data. There is no ink limit, so the surface of the media may be oversaturated. Depending on the item selected under [**Color Management**], this may not be displayed.	
[Preserve Primary Color]	Select this check box to reduce speckling and preserve primary colors. Default value: Cleared	
[Use Embedded ICC Profile]	Select this check box to use the profile embedded in the image data for color conversions (if such a profile is available). Default value: Cleared	
[Specify Profile and Ignore Default]	Printer profiles are profiles that are used when outputting jobs to the printer. Normally, the optimal profile is selected to match the media selected with the [Media Type] list under [Quality Settings], so there is no need to change the profile. Default value: Cleared	
[Optimizer Level]	Adjusts the optimizer ink amount during printing according to the media and printing environment. An adjustment range of -5 to +5 is possible.	P. 122 Performing Test Printing to Determine the Optimizer Ink Amount

[Color Adjustment]

Adjusts the level and tone of each color.

Item	Description	Refer to
[Level Adjustment]	Adjusts the color saturation and contrast of the entire image.	P. 127 Adjusting the Color Saturation, Contrast, and Brightness of the Entire Image
[Set individual level]	Select this check box to individually adjust the ink that was selected with [**Quality Settings**]>[**Mode**]. Default value: Selected	
[All Colors]	When the [**Set individual level**] check box is not selected, the level of all colors is adjusted.	
[Contrast]	Move the bar to the + (right) direction to increase and to the - (left) direction to decrease the contrast.	
[Brightness]	Move the bar to the + (right) direction to increase and to the - (left) direction to decrease the brightness.	
[Reset ALL]	Click this button to reset all the level adjustment parameters to their default values (0). You can check the adjusted image in the layout area preview.	
[Edit Tone Curves]	Use the tone curve to fine-tune the tone and color of the image. * A spot color is displayed according to the ink type. Default value: [**Apply to All Colors**]	P. 128 Adjusting the Tone Curve
[Channel]		
[Apply to All Colors]		
[Cyan]		
[Magenta]		
[Yellow]		
[Black]		
[Show All Channels]	Display channels other than the curve for the ink being adjusted. Use this as an aid when setting. Default value: Cleared	
[Load...]	You can open a tone curve where the settings were saved.	
[Save...]	You can assign a name and save a set tone curve. The file extension is .rcv.	
[Printer Color Match Settings]	Adjust for variation in the output colors resulting from changes over time with the same model or from individual differences with different machines of the same model.	P. 136 Obtaining a Stable Output Color
[Perform Printer Color Matching]	This is enabled when data is registered with [Printer Color Match Settings]. However because it depends on the print mode, data created for general use will not be displayed when other media is set.	
[Reference Printer Data]		
[Color Settings]		
[Target Printer Data]		
[Color Settings]		

[File Format]

Configures the necessary settings to match the file format and color settings of the data to print.

Item	Description	Refer to
[EPS]	Sets the margins for data that contains cutting lines (cutting data).	
[Margin]		
[Spot Color Settings]	Displayed in the color name field when a spot color is used in the job. When the output color is specified in the detail settings, the specified value is displayed in the output color field.	
[Convert Spot Color]	When the RIP is selected, spot color conversion is performed. Even when spot color conversion is performed, the spot color in the preview image is not converted.	P. 226 Printing with Spot Colors
[Color Name]	The color name and output color are displayed when a spot color is used in the job.	
[Output Color]		
[Details]	Opens the [Spot Color List] window.	
[Spot Color List]	The name of the spot color used in the job is displayed.	
[Edit Output Color]	Used when spot color conversion is performed.	
[Edit Spot Color]	Specifies the conversion color using [**Use Color Library**], [**Specify Lab**], or [**CMYK**]. When a spot color name that includes a library name is selected in the [Spot Color List], the [Edit Output Color] check box changes to [**Use Spot Color Library**].	
[Use Color Library]	From [**Spot Color Management**], select the spot color library in the pull-down list, and then select from the list below.	
[Specify Lab]	Uses the values from measurement or an ordinary color library, and specifies the "L," "a," and "b" values.	
[CMYK]	Specifies the CMYK values.	
[Matching Method]	Specifies how to perform conversion when the color is specified with the Lab color space.	
[Perceptual]	Converts colors while maintaining tonal balance. The color values are changed, but their values relative to each other remain the same. This setting is suitable for photographic images.	
[Colorimetric]	Converts colors with emphasis on brightness. A color outside of the printer's color gamut is converted to a color with the same brightness within the printer's color gamut.	
[Saturation]	Converts colors with emphasis on color vibrancy. A color outside of the printer's color gamut is converted to a color with the same saturation within the printer's color gamut. This setting is suitable for printing charts and graphs.	
[Absolute]	This option is not commonly used. Select this setting for special uses such as printing logo colors.	
[Special Color Settings]	When a special color is set, it is displayed in the [**Input Color**] and [**Output Color**] fields. When the output color is edited in the [**Details**] settings, the CMYK values are changed.	

Item	Description	Refer to
[Convert Special Color (Value Specified Color)]	When the RIP is selected, special color conversion is performed. Even when special color conversion is performed, the special color in the preview image is not converted.	P. 282 Fine-tuning the Output Color of a Special Color
[Input Color]	When a special color is set, [Input Color] and [Output Color] are displayed.	
[Output Color]		
[Details]	The [Special Color List] window appears.	
[Special Color List]	The registered special colors are displayed. When the output color is specified with the Lab color space, right-click in the [Matching Method] column to select the matching method.	
[Edit Output Color]	Used when special color conversion is performed.	
[Select color from Roland Color System Library]	Specifies the Roland Color System Library CMYK values.	
[CMYK]	Specifies the CMYK values.	
[Matching Method]	Sets the color matching method. When CMYK values are specified, the [Matching Method] setting is disabled.	
[Perceptual]	Converts colors while maintaining tonal balance. The color values are changed, but their values relative to each other remain the same. This setting is suitable for photographic images.	
[Colorimetric]	Converts colors with emphasis on brightness. A color outside of the printer's color gamut is converted to a color with the same brightness within the printer's color gamut.	
[Saturation]	Converts colors with emphasis on color vibrancy. A color outside of the printer's color gamut is converted to a color with the same saturation within the printer's color gamut. This setting is suitable for printing charts and graphs.	
[Absolute]	This option is not commonly used. Select this setting for special uses such as printing logo colors.	

[Mark]

Sets the details when marks and job information are added to and printed with the job.

Item	Description	Refer to
[Marks]	Configures the crop mark, margin mark, and other settings.	
[Type]	Configures the settings for adding a variety of marks.	P. 174 Adding Trim Marks or Margin Marks
[No Marks]	Trim marks and margin marks are not printed.	
[Trim Marks]	Prints trim marks added at the four corners of the job.	
[Margin Marks]	Leaves margins around the job and prints the margin marks at the four corners of the margin.	
[FOTOBA Cutline Marks]	Adds and prints specialized cutting marks when using Fotoba International S.R.L.'s finishing cutters.	
[Crop Marks (Print&Cut Alignment)]	Specifies the crop mark setting range. However crop marks cannot be added when the image width is less than 60 mm (2.36 in.).	P. 313 Applying Crop Marks Individually to Multiple Images
[Entire Area]	Adds crop marks to the entire image. However the crop marks are automatically printed by the printer. Therefore the crop marks are not displayed in the preview.	
[For Each Row]	Crop marks will be applied with the row of images treated as a single group.	
[For Each Data Entry]	Crop marks will be applied to each individual image.	
[Job Property Label]	This is a method of printing information such as the print settings and the print date under the image.	P. 175 Printing Job Information
[Print Job Properties]	Prints the job information.	
[File Name]	Prints the file name.	
[Layout]	Prints the number of copies and scale.	
[Quality Settings]	Prints the current quality settings.	
[Color Settings]	Prints the details of the color settings.	
[Printer Color Match]	Prints the color matching information.	
[File Format]	Prints the settings of the spot colors and special colors (only when the conversion is enabled).	
[Device Controls]	Prints the feed calibration (only when **[Use Printer Settings]** is not selected).	
[Job Management]	Prints the job handling after printing.	
[Clip and Tile]	Prints the location of the tile (clipped location and tile size for a clipped image).	
[Spot Color]	Prints the generated pattern of the automatically generated plate, the plate density, and the corrected value.	
[Date/Time]	Prints the date and time that the job was processed.	
[Notes]	Prints the text entered in the input field.	

[Printer Controls]

Sets the printer control method during printing.

Item	Description	Refer to
[General]	Sets the sheet cut-off after output and page space.	
[Cut Sheet after Output]	Cuts the sheet after output. Default value: Cleared	P. 104 Cutting the Media after Output
[Use Custom Settings]	Changes [**Page Space**]. Default value: Cleared	P. 105 Setting the Space to the Next Printing Start Location
[Page Space]	Sets the space to the next printing start location.	
[Feed Calibration Controls]	Configures the settings in order to alleviate the horizontal bands that occur during printing. Default value: [**Use Printer Settings**]	P. 106 Determining How to Alleviate Horizontal Bands: [**Feed Calibration Controls**]
[Use Default Media Settings]	Printing is performed with the recommended values for the media selected with [**Media Type**] under [**Quality Settings**].	
[Use Custom Settings]	Printing is performed with the values set in this window.	
[Use Printer Settings]	Printing is performed with the settings configured on the printer.	
[Feed Calibration]	If you select [**Use Custom Settings**], enter the [**Feed Calibration**].	
[Rotary Controls]	The optional rotary axis unit is used to print on a cylindrical object (media) while it is rotated. Click [**Automatic Calculation**] to calculate the number of nozzles (the feed length) to use.	P. 221 Printing Using the Rotary Axis Unit
[Nozzle Amount to Use in Printing]		
[Automatic Calculation]		
[Other Controls]	Specifies the control method for [**Vacuum Power**], [**Dry Time**], and [**Head Height**].	
[Use Default Media Settings]	Printing is performed with the recommended values for the media selected with [**Media Type**] under [**Quality Settings**].	
[Use Custom Settings]	Printing is performed using the [**Vacuum Power**], [**Dry Time**], and [**Head Height**] which are set in this window.	
[Use Printer Settings]	Printing is performed with the settings configured on the printer.	
[Vacuum Power]	Sets the intensity of the vacuum that holds the media flat on the platen. This can be set when [Use Custom Settings] is selected.	P. 107 Using Media That Wrinkles Easily/Does Not Move Smoothly: [**Vacuum Power**]
[Normal]		
[Strong]		

Item	Description	Refer to
[Dry Time]	Sets the time (in minutes) to wait before printing the next page or cutting. This can be set when [Use Custom Settings] is selected.	P. 108 Setting the Drying Time after Printing
[Head Height]	Sets the height of the print head. This can be set when [Use Custom Settings] is selected. Normally do not change this setting.	P. 109 Adjusting Print Head Height to Match Media Thickness
[Heater Controls]	Specifies the [Heater Controls] setting method. Default value: [Use Printer Settings]	P. 110 Setting the Heater/ Dryer Temperature
[Use Default Media Settings]	Printing is performed using the settings for each media that were configured with VersaWorks.	
[Use Custom Settings]	Sets the temperature for [Pre Heater], [Print Heater], and [Dryer].	
[Pre Heater]		
[Print Heater]		
[Dryer]		
[Use Printer Settings]	Printing is performed with the settings configured on the printer.	
[UV Lamp Control]	Specifies the UV lamp control method.	
[Operation Mode]	Specifies the target for irradiation by the UV lamp.	
[Print]	This is the default setting. Printing and UV irradiation are performed.	
[UV Post Cure Only]	You can configure the settings so that only the UV illumination matching that was performed during printing is performed again after printing.	P. 113 Performing Only UV Lamp Illumination
[Scan Speed]	This can be set when [UV Post Cure Only] is selected.	
[Change UV Lamp Irradiation Intensity]	Adjusts the illumination intensity of the printer's UV lamp.	P. 112 Reducing the UV Lamp Illumination Intensity
[Illumination Intensity]		
[Print Size Correction]	You can correct a shifted printing result by adjusting the horizontal and vertical sizes of the print data. If you enter the measured sizes (the actual print size) and the expected sizes (the size to be printed), the correction factors can be automatically calculated and easily set. You can also enter the correction factors directly.	P. 111 Correcting the Dimensions in the Printing Results
[Horizontal]	Enter the correction factors directly.	
[Vertical]		
[Correction Calculator]	Click this button to display the [Correction Calculator] window.	
[Correction in X-Direction]	Sets the correction factor for the horizontal direction. Can be set within a range of -5.00% to +5.00%.	
[Expected Size]	Enter the size to be printed.	
[Measured Size]	Enter the measured size of the printing result.	
[Correction Factor]	This is automatically calculated on the basis of the entered values.	
[Correction in Y-Direction]	Sets the correction factor for the vertical direction. Can be set within a range of -5.00% to +5.00%.	
[Expected Size]	Enter the size to be printed.	

Item		Description	Refer to
	[**Measured Size**]	Enter the measured size of the printing result.	
	[**Correction Factor**]	This is automatically calculated on the basis of the entered values.	

[Cut Controls]

Sets the printer control method during cutting.

Item	Description	Refer to
[Cutting Options]	Configures the cutting operation mode and detailed settings. Detailed settings default values: All cleared	
[Operation Mode]	Selects the printing and cutting operation mode.	
[Print & Cut]	Select to perform printing and cutting continuously.	P. 307 Performing Printing and Cutting Continuously
[Cut & Print]	This method uses print data including cutting lines to perform cutting first followed by printing. Performing cutting first reduces the drying time compared to cutting after printing. However depending on the conditions of the media after cutting, there may be an effect on printing.	P. 314 Performing Printing after Cutting
[Print Only]	Select to perform printing only.	
[Cut Only]	Select to perform cutting only.	P. 305 Performing Just Cutting
[Cut All Paths]	All paths will be recognized as cutting lines and will be cut regardless of whether they are drawn with the spot color (CutContour).	P. 305 Performing Just Cutting
[Cut Image Boundaries]	Cuts the border of the job regardless of whether a cutting line is present.	
[Return to Origin After Print]	Pulls back the media after printing.	
[Return to Origin After Cut]	Returns the media to the origin (the position before cutting) after cutting.	
[Cut Passes]	Specifies the [Cut Passes].	
[Cutting Conditions Settings]	Configures printer cutting conditions such as the blade force.	P. 321 Step 2: Configuring the Cutting Conditions
[Cutting Speed]	Enter [Cutting Speed] in cm/s.	
[Cutting Force]	Enter [Cutting Force] in units of gram-force.	
[Blade Offset]	Enter the blade offset value (the distance between the tip and the center of the blade) in millimeters. Enter the offset value for the blade being used.	
[Execute PREFEED Operation]	Feeds out media according to the size of the data before starting output, thereby preventing the media from being pulled out with excessive force. The media is then pulled back to the output-start location.	
[Perforated Cut Controls]	Configures the perforated cutting at image boundaries for print data including cutting lines.	P. 317 Performing Perforated Cutting at Image Boundaries
[Perform Perforated Cut for Image Boundaries]	This can be selected and the boundary can be changed to perforated cutting when [Cut Image Boundaries] is selected. Default value: Cleared	
[Cutting Conditions Settings]	Configures the detailed perforated cutting conditions.	

Item		Description	Refer to
	[Perforation Length]	Sets the length of the part that will be cut through to the backing paper. Default value: 20 mm (0.79 in.)	
	[Perforation Force]	Sets the blade force for the part that will be cut through to the backing paper. Default value: 150 gf	
	[Half-cut Length]	Sets the length of the part where just the sticker surface will be cut, leaving the backing paper. Default value: 1,000 mm (39.37 in.)	
	[Half-cut Force]	Sets the blade force for the part where just the sticker surface will be cut, leaving the backing paper. Default value: 1 gf	

[Job Management]

Configures settings related to the processing of jobs registered to the job list.

Item	Description	Refer to
[Input Folder]	Set the job queue folder. The files placed in the set folder are automatically loaded in to Queue A.	
[Action After Printing]	Configures the settings so that intermediate files and jobs are automatically deleted after printing finishes. Default value: [Save Job]	P. 150 Setting Processing after Printing Is Completed
[Save Job]	Jobs will be saved after printing finishes. The data processed by the RIP is kept, so you can print the job again without having to process it by the RIP.	
[Delete RIP Data]	All intermediate data such as the data processed by the RIP will be deleted, but the job will remain in the job list. To print the job again, you will have to process it by the RIP again.	
[Delete Job]	Jobs will be deleted completely and will be deleted from the job list.	
[Action for Incoming Jobs]	Sets the operation when a job was added to the job list.	
[Action]	Specifies the job processing method. Default value: [Do Nothing]	P. 72 Step 1: Prepare the RIP Server
[Do Nothing]	Neither processing by the RIP nor printing is performed when a job is added to the job list.	
[RIP Only]	Only processing by the RIP is automatically performed when a job is added to the job list.	
[RIP and Print]	Both processing by the RIP and printing are automatically performed when a job is added to the job list.	
[Auto Rotate to Save Media]	When the length of a job is bigger than its width, the job is rotated 90 degrees and arranged on the media in order to reduce the length. Default value: Selected	
[By Time]	When the specified time is reached, a nested job is created. Processing by the RIP and printing are not started until the nested job is created. Furthermore, if you also set [Set Time Interval], nested jobs are created according to the set interval of time. Default value: Cleared	P. 147 Automatically Creating a Nested Job
[Time]		
[Set Time Interval]		
[By Paper Length]	Jobs are nested until the specified media length is reached. A nested job is created when the specified media length is reached. Processing by the RIP and printing are not started until the nested job is created. You also will not be able to check the state of nesting in the layout window. Default value: Cleared	
[Length]		
[By Number of Jobs]	A nested job is created when the number of jobs registered in the queue folder reaches the specified value. Default value: Cleared	
[Number of Jobs]		
[Compose]	When grayscale print data (TIFF) of the same size as CMYK color print data (TIFF) is added to the job list, they are combined to create a single job.	P. 219 Composing TIFF Image Print Data: [Compose Job]

Item		Description	Refer to
	[RIP while Printing]	Use the following procedure to configure the settings so that jobs are printed while they are processed by the RIP. However in some cases the function may be disabled. Default value: Cleared	P. 151 Printing while Processing by the RIP

[Clip and Tile]

Configures the settings for tiling and overlaps.

Item	Description	Refer to
[Clipping]	Configures clip settings to select and print only a part of the image. This function is useful when you want to print just a part of a job with a large printing size and check the color tone or picture quality before printing the whole job.	P. 179 Printing the Selected Area of the Image: [Clip Image]
[Clip Image]	Select this check box to enable selecting part of the image.	
[Top Left Position]	Enter the location of the upper-left corner of the clip area with the origin at the upper-left corner of the image.	
[X]		
[Y]		
[Size]	Enter the width and the height of the clip area.	
[W]		
[H]		
[Maintain Clipped Position]	You can print a clipped image maintained at its original position. If you do not specify this setting, the clipped image will automatically be placed at the origin.	
[Tiling]	Divides an image into tiles that can be printed on the media for printing when you want to print a job that is too large to fit on the media that is being used.	P. 183 Tiling an Image
[Manual Tiling]	Sets the number of tiles and the tile size.	
[Tile Location]		
[Row]		
[Column]		
[W]		
[H]		
[Tile Size]	Divides the job evenly at the specified size with the origin at the upper-left corner of the media.	
[Size]	Specifies the division media or size. When [CustomCUT] is selected, specifies [W] and [H]. When [CustomROLL] is selected, specifies [W].	
[Number of Tiles]	Divides the job into the number of tiles specified with [Horizontal] and [Vertical]. All tiles have the same size.	
[Horizontal]		
[Vertical]		
[Place alternated]	The tiles in even-numbered columns will be rotated 180 degrees.	
[Overlap]	Sets the overlap width for divided images (tiles) when dividing a large job and printing the divided parts (tile printing).	P. 176 Adding an Overlap Width for Tiled Printing
[Type]	Sets the method for creating overlap widths. Default value: [None]	
[None]	No overlap width is set.	
[Top-Left]	Creates overlap widths at the top and left of tiles.	
[ALL Corners]	Creates overlap widths around each tile.	

Item	Description	Refer to
[Size]	Specifies the overlap width.	
[Print Overlap Lines]	Select this check box to print overlap lines.	
[Stroke]	Sets the line width for the overlap lines.	
[Color Settings]	Sets the line color for the overlap lines.	

[Variable Data]

Configures settings for replacing portions of the image to create output with unique images or text per copy.

Item	Description	Refer to
[Variable Data Settings]	Loads a variable print data file and configures the attribute settings. • (Load from file): Specifies and loads a database file. • (Save to file): Saves the database file that was edited with the variable data settings. • (New): Adds a line to the database file. • (Delete): Deletes a line from the database file.	
[Enable Variable Data Printing]	This check box can be selected when a file for variable printing has been added to the job.	P. 201 About Variable Printing
[Attribute]	Selecting the [Enable Variable Data Printing] check box displays the [Attribute] window. The attributes can be configured when a database file (file created with csv or other means containing the path information of the image file that you want to insert) is loaded and the variable data settings are displayed.	P. 205 Step 3: Load the Files Required for Variable Printing
[Type]	When the database file is loaded, data that starts with strings that denote paths (such as "C:\") is automatically recognized as image data, otherwise it is automatically recognized as text data.	P. 207 Step 4: Configure the Variable Printing Settings
[Image]	Sets the image for variable printing.	P. 205 Step 3: Load the Files Required for Variable Printing
[Fit]	Sets whether to fit the image in the variable field.	P. 207 Step 4: Configure the Variable Printing Settings
[Alignment]	Selects the alignment of the image in the variable field.	
[Rotate]	Rotates the image in the variable field in units of 90 degrees.	
[Mirror]	Horizontally mirrors the image in the variable field.	
[Opacity]	Sets the opacity of the image. Set this to 0% to make the target transparent.	
[Draw on White Background]	Select this check box to print the background object on top when the background object and the variable field overlap.	
[Color]	Sets the background color inside the variable field.	

Item	Description	Refer to
[Color Settings]	Click the square to display the [Color Management] window.	
[ColorSpace]	Select [RGB], [CMYK], or [Transparent]. If you select [RGB] or [CMYK], you can specify the corresponding values.	
[Text]	Sets the text for variable printing.	
[Font]	Selects the font type.	
[Font Size]	Sets the font size.	
[Tracking]	Sets the spacing between two characters. Set this to 100 to make the spacing one-character wide.	
[Auto Sizing]	Select this check box to automatically adjust the font size to fit the text in the variable field when the text is larger than the variable field.	
[Alignment]	Sets the alignment of the text in the variable field.	
[Rotate]	Rotates the text in the variable field in units of 180 degrees.	
[Mirror]	Horizontally mirrors the text in the variable field.	
[Opacity]	Sets the opacity of the entire variable field. Set this to 0% to make the target transparent.	
[Draw on White Background]	Select this check box to print the background object on top when the background object and the variable field overlap.	
[Effect]	Click the following icons to set the text effect:	
[offset]	Sets the offset widths of shadow characters as percentages.	
[Stroke]	Sets the stroke widths of outlined characters in points.	
[Color]	Sets the color of the text and the background color inside the variable field.	
[Field Settings]	You can set the size and location of the variable field. Either drag the variable field in the layout area or else select [**Field Settings**] and specify [X], [Y], [W], and [H].	
[X]		
[Y]		
[W]		
[H]		
[Reset]	The variable field that was changed in VersaWorks is reset to the job status.	
[Show All Variable Data Fields]	Displays all variable fields in the job.	

[Special Color]

Configures the spot color printing settings.

Item	Description	Refer to
[Special Color Plate Generation]	When there is a spot color that is not used in print data, you can generate spot color plates (white, gloss, primer, and metallic silver) in VersaWorks. You cannot generate spot color plates with print data where all of [RDG_WHITE], [RDG_GLOSS], [RDG_PRIMER], and [RDG_MetallicSilver] are used in Illustrator. (When one of [RDG_WHITE], [RDG_GLOSS], [RDG_PRIMER], or [RDG_MetallicSilver] is used, spot color plates can be generated only for the spot colors that are not used.)	P. 261 Special Color Plate Generation with VersaWorks
[Generate Special Color Plate]	The check box is active when the spot color selected with [**Quality Settings**]>[**Mode**] is not used in print data.	
[Generated Pattern]	Specifies the location to generate the spot color plate. Default value: [**Print Area**]	
[Print Area]	The plate is generated below the objects.	
[Outside Print Area]	The plate is generated in a location where no objects are present.	
[Entire Image]	The plate is generated for the entire job size.	
[Density]	Specifies the spot color plate density.	
[Special Color Plate Correction]	The spot color plate setting is displayed in the top part. Specify the position and size correction values in the bottom part.	
[Print Mode]	Displays the [**Media Type**], [**Print Quality**], [**Resolution**], and [**Mode**] from the quality settings.	
[Spot Color]	Displays the generated spot color.	
[White]	Generates a white spot color plate.	
[Gloss]	Generates a gloss spot color plate.	
[Primer]	Generates a primer spot color plate.	
[Metallic Silver]	Generates a metallic silver spot color plate.	
[Position Correction]	First click [**Test Print**], then select either [**Simple**] or [**Details**] and click [**OK**]. Based on the test printing results, enter [**Horizontal**] and [**Vertical**] correction values. • Select [**Simple**] to make rough corrections. • Select [**Details**] to make detailed corrections.	P. 269 Adjusting the Position and Size of Spot Color Plates
[Horizontal]		
[Vertical]		
[Size Correction]	First click [**Test Print**], then select either [**Simple**] or [**Details**] and click [**OK**]. Based on the test printing results, enter the [**Size Correction**] value. • Select [**Simple**] to make rough corrections. • Select [**Details**] to make detailed corrections.	

[Customize]

Customizes the display of the printing setting buttons and of the labels below these buttons.

Item		Description	Refer to
[Tab Display Settings]		Sets the display method of the printing setting buttons.	P. 38 Customizing the Display of the Job Settings Tab
	[Show Labels]	Select this check box to display labels below the printing setting buttons. Default value: Selected	
	[Tabs to Show and Their Order]	Sets the printing setting buttons to display.	
	[Tabs to Hide]	Selects the printing setting buttons to hide.	
	[Reset]	Returns the display of the printing setting buttons to the default settings.	

Frequently Asked Questions

Unintended Colors Are Printed 380
Colors Are Too Light or Too Dark 381
Making Black Darker 382
Adding White Plates to CMYK Data in VersaWorks 383
Layering the Output of Primer, White Ink, and CMYK Ink 386
Different Colors Printed for Queue A and Queue B 387
Colors Changing after a Reinstallation 388
Registering Swatches for Spot Colors 389
Adjusting the Ink Limit 390
Setting a Margin around the Print Data 391
Increasing the Printing Speed While Maintaining Quality 392
Ink Consumption Not Displayed in the Job Log 393
Different Monitor Colors and Printed Colors 394
Saving Printing Settings 395
Performing Only Processing by the RIP for a Job 396
Changing the Memory Usage Setting 397
Printing a Single Job Multiple Times 398
Preventing Print Data from being Tiled 399
Checking Whether the Job Assistant Function Is Installed 400
Cutting All Lines 401
Cutting the Job Data Boundaries 402
Checking the Printer Connection 403
Connecting Multiple Printers 404
    LAN Connection 404
    USB Connection 406

Unintended Colors Are Printed

The appropriate color setting has not been selected.

Change the color setting and print to bring the printed color closer to that of the image. You can also change the setting little by little to use the Generate Variation Job function to compare various settings.

RELATED LINKS

- P. 123 Adjusting the Output Colors
- P. 189 Printing for Quality and Color Comparisons

Colors Are Too Light or Too Dark

Color brightness has not been adjusted appropriately.

Adjust the color brightness. However, the print density of the white ink (Wh) does not change even if the brightness is changed.

Procedure

1. **In the job list, double-click the job.**

   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **Drag the [Level Adjustment]>[Brightness] slider bar to adjust the brightness.**

4. **Click [OK].**

   You can also perform the same operations in the [**Queue Properties**] window.

   When you perform adjustments in the [**Queue Properties**] window, the same adjustments are performed on all the jobs added to the job list.

   If you want to apply the same adjustment values to multiple jobs, first configure the settings in the [**Queue Properties**] window.

RELATED LINKS

- P. 127 Adjusting the Color Saturation, Contrast, and Brightness of the Entire Image

Making Black Darker

The color setting is not appropriate, or the color specified in the print data is not appropriate.

Try the [**Sign & Display**], [**MAX Impact**], and [**MAX Density Japan**] color settings. Alternatively, try specifying [**RVW-BK22A**] of the **Roland Color System Library** for the color in the print data.

RELATED LINKS

- P. 123 Adjusting the Output Colors

Adding White Plates to CMYK Data in VersaWorks

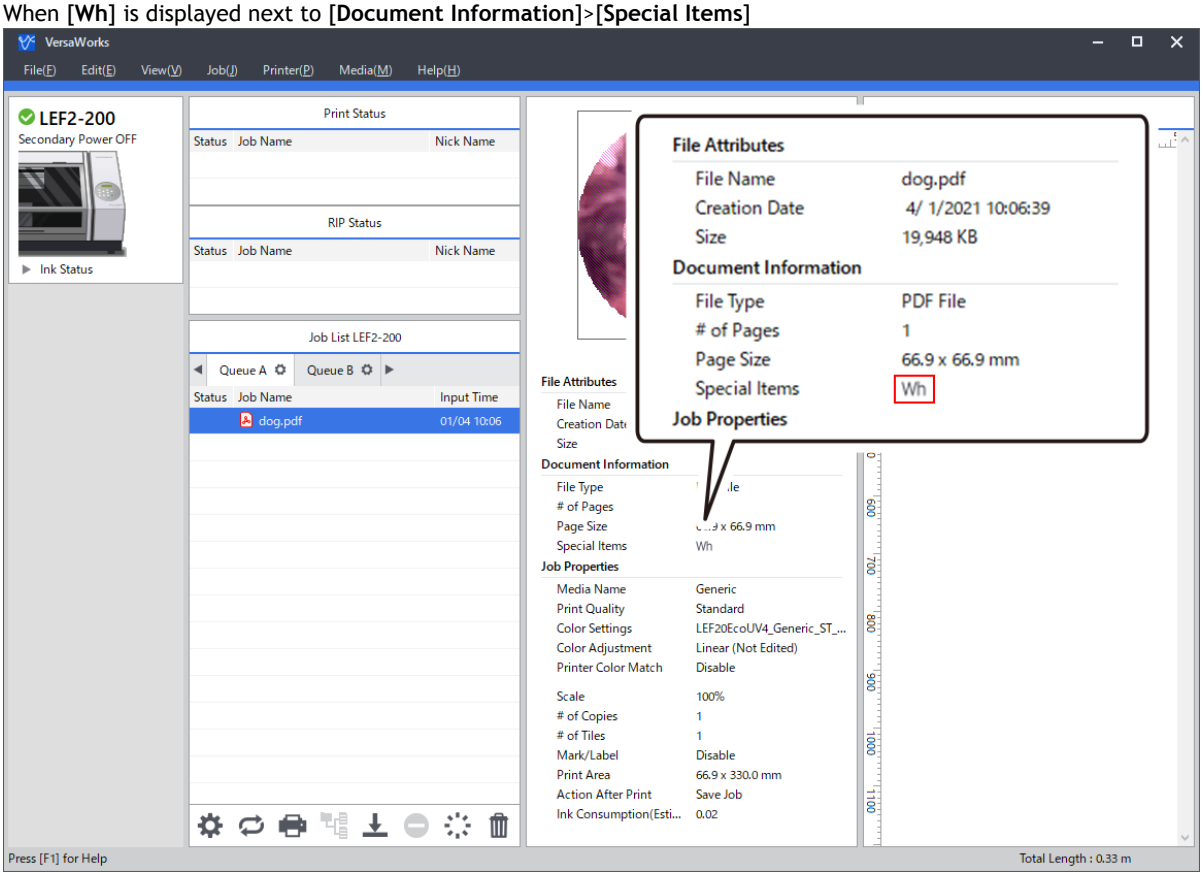
This section explains how to easily create print data to print in white using white ink from print data that does not include [**RDG_WHITE**] in VersaWorks. The spot color plate automatic generation function is used. However, you cannot create spot color plates just for specific objects in the data. If you want to do so, you have to create print data that includes [**RDG_WHITE**] in advance.

Spot Color Plate Generation with Job Assistant is possible when the print data is a PDF.

MEMO

Spot color plate automatic generation cannot be set for the print data types listed below.

- When [**Wh**] is displayed next to [**Document Information**]>[**Special Items**]



- Raster print data (.bmp, .gif, .jpg, .png, .tiff, etc.)
- Variable field specified with a template file for variable printing

Procedure

1. **Double-click the target job.**

   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

2. **Click**  .

   The [**Quality Settings**] window appears.

3. **For [Mode], select the mode to print that contains [White].**

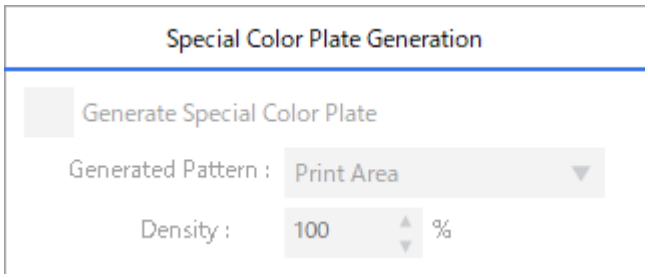
4. Click  .

5. **Select the [Generate Special Color Plate] check box.**

   The spot color plate to print that contains white ink is generated automatically. In the layout area, the part to print in white ink is shaded in pink.

MEMO

If the check box is grayed out, the print data already contains spot color [**RDG_WHITE**].



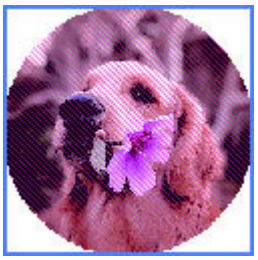
6. **Select the generated pattern of the spot color plate.**

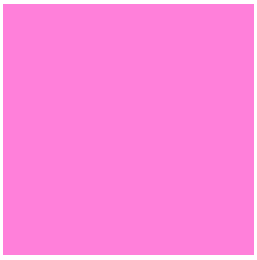
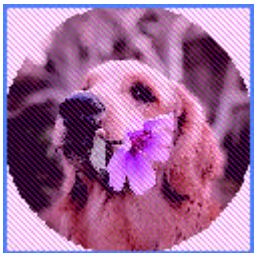
IMPORTANT

If you want to create a spot color plate with a shape other than the following generated patterns, you have to create print data that includes [**RDG_WHITE**] in advance.

Print data (example)



[Generated Pattern]	[Image of the spot color plate to generate]	[Job Settings] window
[Print Area]	The spot color plate is generated below the objects. 	

[Generated Pattern]	[Image of the spot color plate to generate]	[Job Settings] window
[**Outside Print Area**]	The spot color plate is generated where no objects are present. 	
[**Entire Image**]	The spot color plate is generated for the entire job area. 	

7. Click [OK] .

Layering the Output of Primer, White Ink, and CMYK Ink

Create a primer plate, a white plate, and a CMYK plate using a single print data. You can add them to the job list, print only the primer plate, and then print the [**White Plate**]>[**CMYK Plate**] at the same time so that the white plate and the CMYK plate are printed without any misalignment.

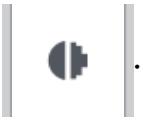
- **Creating print data**

  When using an application such as Adobe Illustrator to create the print data, create the data of each color (primer, white ink, and CMYK ink) on its own layer, and then save all the layers as a single piece of data. Order the layers so that spot colors (white and primer) are on top.
- **Printing in VersaWorks**

Procedure

1. **Add the print data described above to the VersaWorks job list.**
2. **Select the target job from the job list and check that [Wh] [Pr] is displayed next to [Document Information]>[Special Items].**

   If [**Wh**] [**Pr**] is not displayed, the print data does not include [**RDG_WHITE**] and [**RDG_PRIMER**]. Check the print data.
3. **In the job list, double-click the job whose printing settings you want to configure.**

   The **Job Settings** window appears.
4. **Click**  **.**
5. **For Print Quality, select High Quality, Normal, or High Speed.**

   Select the option that matches the required quality.
6. **Set [Mode] to [Primer], and then print.**
7. **Set [Mode] to [White -> CMYK], and then print.**

RELATED LINKS

- P. 237 Printing Using White Ink/Gloss Ink/Primer/Metallic Silver Ink

Different Colors Printed for Queue A and Queue B

The settings differ between queue folders.

If you add the same print data to separate queue folders but the printed colors differ even though you have not changed the job settings, make sure the following settings are the same for each queue folder.

- **[Quality]**
- **[Color Adjustment]**
- **[File Format]**

Procedure

1. **Click a queue folder tab.**
2. **Click**  **.**

   The properties window (Default Setting window) for the selected queue folder appears.

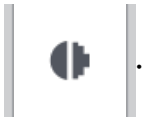
Colors Changing after a Reinstallation

The queue folder settings return to the initial state.

You must reset the settings to their state before the installation.

Procedure

1. **Click a queue folder tab.**
2. **Click**  **.**

   The properties window (Default Setting window) for the selected queue folder appears.
3. **Click**  **.**
4. **Click [Preset] for [Color Settings] to reset the settings, returning them to the previous state.**

   When the contents that were set on the queue properties screen were saved as a printing settings file, load that file.

   P. 163 Reusing Queue Folder Settings

Registering Swatches for Spot Colors

In VersaWorks, spot colors can be converted to process colors for printing.

Configure the following settings and load Roland Color System Library colors into the illustration software color palette.

- P. 233 When Using Adobe Illustrator
- P. 234 When Using CorelDRAW

Adjusting the Ink Limit

The ink does not dry easily or smudges, or you want better color saturation.

Add media and set the ink limit.

MEMO

- To change the color, it is better to adjust the color in the original data than to adjust the ink limit.
- Note that setting too high an ink limit will lead to ink smudging or prevent the ink from hardening.

Procedure

1. **Click [Media]>[Media Explorer].**
2. **Right-click the media whose ink limit will be adjusted, and then click [Copy Media].**
3. **Enter the name of the media to add, and then click [OK].**
4. **Select the print mode whose ink limit will be adjusted, and then click** .

   The [**Media Explorer**] window appears.
5. **Click [Set Ink Limit] in the left pane.**
6. **Change the [Total Ink] setting, and then click [OK].**
7. **When you click [OK] in the window, a confirmation message appears. Click [Yes].**

RELATED LINKS

- P. 127 Adjusting the Color Saturation, Contrast, and Brightness of the Entire Image

Setting a Margin around the Print Data

Procedure

1. **In the job list, double-click the job.**
   The [**Job Settings**] window appears.

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **Enter the margins in [Y] and [X] for [Position].**
   You can estimate the margins by performing operations while viewing the preview window.

   MEMO

   Selecting the [**Center on the Media**] check box may lead to misalignment between the printing and cutting lines during cutting with crop marks.

Increasing the Printing Speed While Maintaining Quality

Increasing the printing speed decreases the printing quality, so select settings that maintain a good balance between these two requirements.

Changing the following settings changes the printing speed.

- **[Media Type]**
- **[Print Quality]**
- **[Resolution]**
- **[Mode]**
- **[Orientation]**
- **[Head Speed]**

Ink Consumption Not Displayed in the Job Log

It is displayed when print data RIP processing is performed. Perform RIP processing.

RELATED LINKS

- P. 70 Performing Only Processing by the RIP

Different Monitor Colors and Printed Colors

MEMO

In the monitor, colors are expressed as a combination of the three primary colors (RGB). However, when printed, colors are expressed as a combination of the ink colors (such as CMYK). This difference in principles results in different ranges of reproducible colors and makes it impossible to have the exact same colors in the monitor and on the printed materials. In addition to this difference in principles, printed colors vary depending on factors such as differences in resolution, the color of the printing media, and the degree to which the ink has dried. Consequently, it is very difficult to match the monitor colors and the printed colors.

If the desired colors are not printed even after you have configured the above settings, use the Roland Color System Library.

P. 230 Printing Using the Roland Color System Library

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Preferences].**
   The [**Preferences**] window appears.
2. **Click the [General] tab.**
3. **From the [Quality] list, select the quality of the preview image.**
   The default value is [**Standard Quality**].
4. **Select the [Enable Monitor Proofing] check box.**
5. **Select [RGB Profile].**
6. **Click [OK].**

Saving Printing Settings

Use one of the following methods to save.

- **Save the printed job.**
  P. 156 Saving a VW Job File
- **Save the queue folder printing settings to a file.**
  P. 163 Step 1: Saving Printing Settings
- **Save the job printing settings to a file.**
  P. 169 Saving the Printing Settings of the Job

RELATED LINKS

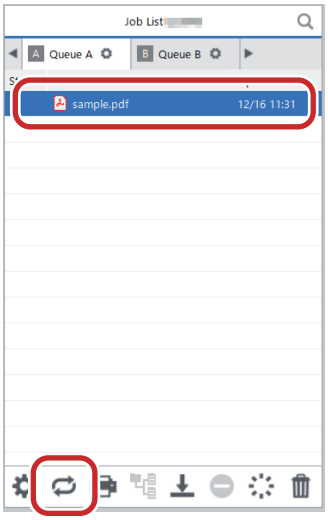
- P. 156 Saving and Reusing Printed Jobs
- P. 163 Reusing Queue Folder Settings
- P. 167 Reusing Job Settings

Performing Only Processing by the RIP for a Job

Configure the settings shown below. However, processing by the RIP takes time when there is a large amount of print data, there are many objects, or the data is complicated (such as when many transparency effects are being used).

Procedure

1. **If you want to perform only processing by the RIP before printing, select the job from the job list, and then click .**



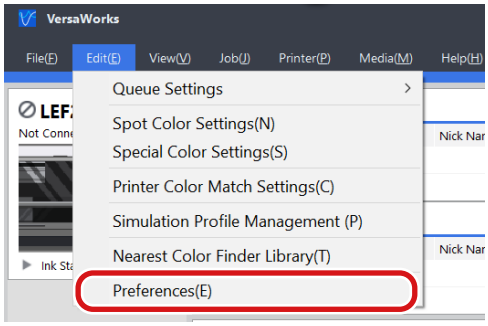
In the job list, is displayed next to jobs that have been processed by the RIP. If you try to process a job that has already been processed by the RIP, a confirmation window appears to ask if you want to process the job by the RIP again. Select whether to process the job by the RIP again.

Changing the Memory Usage Setting

With a large quantity of image data, a memory shortage may occur on the computer, which may result in processing by the RIP and output becoming impossible, or prevent print data from being added to the job list. In this case, increase the amount of memory.

Procedure

1. **Click [Edit]>[Preferences].**

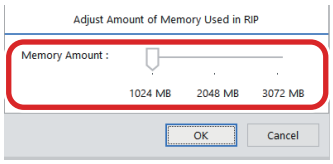


   The **[Preferences]** window appears.

2. **Click the [General] tab.**

3. **Adjust [Memory Amount] under [Adjust Amount of Memory Used in RIP].**

   Drag the slider or click its left and right sides to change the amount of memory.

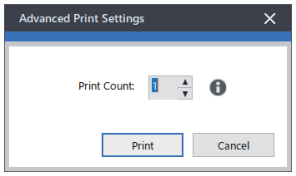


4. **Click [OK].**

Printing a Single Job Multiple Times

Procedure

1. From the job list, select the job to be printed.
2. Click  .
3. Set the [Print Count].



4. Click [Print].

Preventing Print Data from being Tiled

If print data larger than the media size set on the queue folder is added to the job list, the part that extends past the edge of the media is automatically tiled. Automatically acquire the media size and set the print data so its size does not exceed the media size according to the procedure below.

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder to be used.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Load the media in the printer and set up the media.**

3. **Click**  **.**

4. **Click [Get Media Width].**

   The information about the width of the printable area is obtained from the printer and set here.

5. **Click [OK].**

6. **Drag the print data to the job list.**

   The job is added to the job list.

Checking Whether the Job Assistant Function Is Installed

When installing VersaWorks, select whether to install the Job Assistant function.

Job Assistant is an expansion function that can be used to add cutting lines or spot color plates to or configure the layer settings for print data that is registered as a job.

MEMO

If the Job Assistant function is not installed, the settings are configured so this function is not installed when VersaWorks is installed. In this situation, the Job Assistant function will not be installed when VersaWorks is updated, so use the installer to reinstall VersaWorks.

Procedure

1. **Click [Help]>[System Information...].**

   The [System Information] window appears. It can take some time for the system information to be displayed.

2. **Check whether "JobAssistant.exe: *.*.*.*" ("*" are arbitrary values) is indicated.**

   The Job Assistant function is installed if the above indication is present.

RELATED LINKS

- VersaWorks Installation Guide

Cutting All Lines

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder to be used.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Click**  **.**

3. **From the [Operation Mode] list, select one of the following.**
   - **[Print & Cut]**
   - **[Cut & Print]**
   - **[Cut Only]**

4. **Select the [Cut All Paths] check box.**

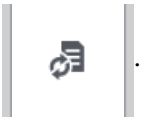
5. **Set [Perforation Length], [Perforation Force], [Half-cut Length], and [Half-cut Force].**
   - [**Perforation Length**]: Length of the part that will be cut through to the backing paper
   - [**Perforation Force**]: Cutting force for the part that will be cut through to the backing paper
   - [**Half-cut Length**]: Length of the part where just the sticker surface will be cut, leaving the backing paper
   - [**Half-cut Force**]: Cutting force for the part where just the sticker surface will be cut, leaving the backing paper

6. **Click [OK].**

   MEMO

   - The source data of the job is an EPS file.
   - A cutting line has been drawn around the border.

     If both of the above conditions are met, additional settings are required. If you do not configure these additional settings, it may not be possible to cut a part of the border. Configure the settings shown below.

   1. In the [**Queue Properties**] window, click  .
   2. Enter a value in [**Margin**] under [**EPS**].
      - If you scale the image in the [**Queue Properties**] or [**Job Settings**] window, the size of the margin will also be scaled.
      - When you add a job to the job list, the margin set with [**Margin**] is automatically added within the range specified by the border.

7. **Click** .

Cutting the Job Data Boundaries

Procedure

1. **Click for the queue folder to be used.**

   The [**Queue Properties**] window appears.

2. **Click**  .

3. **From the [Operation Mode] list, select one of the following.**
   - **[Print & Cut]**
   - **[Cut & Print]**
   - **[Cut Only]**

4. **Select the [Cut Image Boundaries] check box.**

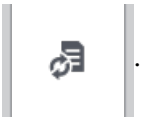
5. **Set [Perforation Length], [Perforation Force], [Half-cut Length], and [Half-cut Force].**
   - [**Perforation Length**]: Length of the part that will be cut through to the backing paper
   - [**Perforation Force**]: Cutting force for the part that will be cut through to the backing paper
   - [**Half-cut Length**]: Length of the part where just the sticker surface will be cut, leaving the backing paper
   - [**Half-cut Force**]: Cutting force for the part where just the sticker surface will be cut, leaving the backing paper

6. **Click [OK].**

   MEMO

   - The source data of the job is an EPS file.
   - A cutting line has been drawn around the border.

     If both of the above conditions are met, additional settings are required. If you do not configure these additional settings, it may not be possible to cut a part of the border. Configure the settings shown below.

   1. In the [**Queue Properties**] window, click  .
   2. Enter a value in [**Margin**] under [**EPS**].
      - If you scale the image in the [**Queue Properties**] or [**Job Settings**] window, the size of the margin will also be scaled.
      - When you add a job to the job list, the margin set with [**Margin**] is automatically added within the range specified by the border.

7. **Click** .

Checking the Printer Connection

View the information of the connected printer.

The top window in VersaWorks shows the printer status (connection and power status) for each registered printer using icons and characters.

Icon	Text status
	[Ready to Print][Secondary Power OFF][Setup Incomplete][Printing][Cutting][Drying][Canceling][Paused][MENU State][Cleaning][Preparing for printing][Ready][Initializing]
	[Paused (Cartridge Uninstalled)][Paused (Ink Empty)][Paused (Head Height Adjustment)][Stopped (Cover Open)][Check the printer]
	[Invalid Model Setting][Invalid Ink Type Setting][Unknown][Media Not Installed][Fatal Error][Waiting for Ink Filling][Check the printer]
	[Not Connected.]

RELATED LINKS

- P. 28 Checking the Printer Connection and Status

Connecting Multiple Printers

You can connect up to four[*1] printers.

This section assumes that the first printer has already been connected and explains how to connect the second and later printers.

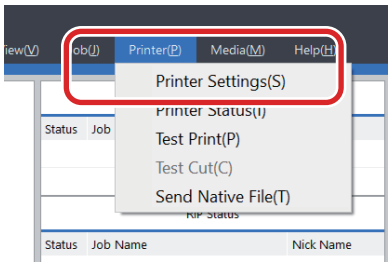
LAN Connection

This section explains how to use an Ethernet cable to connect the printer.

Procedure

1. **Check that the second printer is turned on, and then connect this printer to the computer.**

2. **From the menu bar, click [Printer]>[Printer Settings].**



   The [**Printer Settings**] window appears.

3. **Set the printer to connect.**

   The way to set the printer differs depending on the printer model and on the type of the connection port.

   (1) **Click** ⊕**.**

   (2) **Click [Search for Printers].**

   The [Printer Selection] window appears. If no printer could be found, directly enter the IP address of the printer to connect to and proceed to Step (4).

   (3) **If the [Model Name] and [Serial Number] are displayed for connectable printers, select the printer to connect to, and then click [Select].**

   The IP address of the selected printer is entered.

   > **MEMO**
   >
   > You can only select one printer at a time.

   (4) **Click [Verify].**

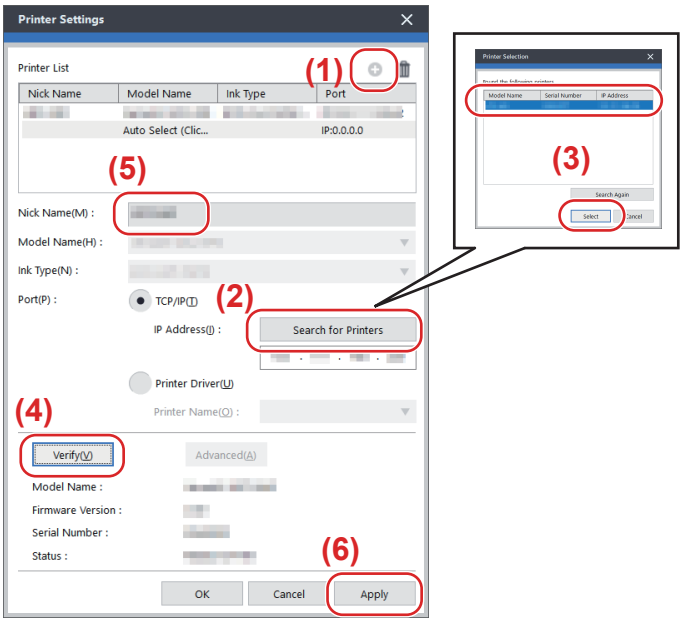
   Items such as the [**Model Name**] and [**Firmware Version**] are displayed.

   (5) **Set the [Nickname].**

   If you do not set a nickname, the model name is displayed.

   (6) **Click [Apply].**

*1 The number of printers that you can connect differs depending on the model. Contact your authorized dealer.



(7) **When the message [Do you want to install the virtual printer driver?] is displayed, click [Next].**

This message does not indicate the printer driver to use in communication. It indicates the virtual printer driver to use when printing directly from the application.

(8) **When the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Yes] (or [Allow]).**

(9) **When the [Add Printer Wizard] window appears, click [Next].**

The information of the connected printer appears in the [**Printer List**].

(10) **Click [OK].**

4. **To add more printers, repeat Steps 1 to 3.**

5. **When you're done making all the settings, click [OK].**

USB Connection

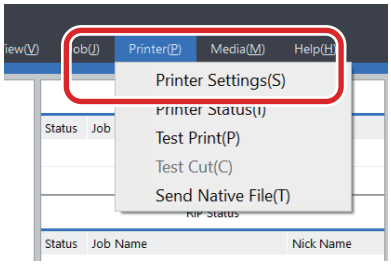
This section explains how to use a USB cable to connect the printer.

Please note that a USB connection requires a separate Windows-based driver, which is included with the printer.

Procedure

1. **Check that the second printer is turned on, and then connect this printer to the computer.**

2. **From the menu bar, click [Printer]>[Printer Settings].**



   The [**Printer Settings**] window appears.

3. **Set the printer to connect.**

   The way to set the printer differs depending on the printer model and on the type of the connection port.

   (1) **Click** ⊕**.**

   (2) **Select [Printer Driver].**

   (3) **Select the printer to connect to from the [Printer Name] list.**

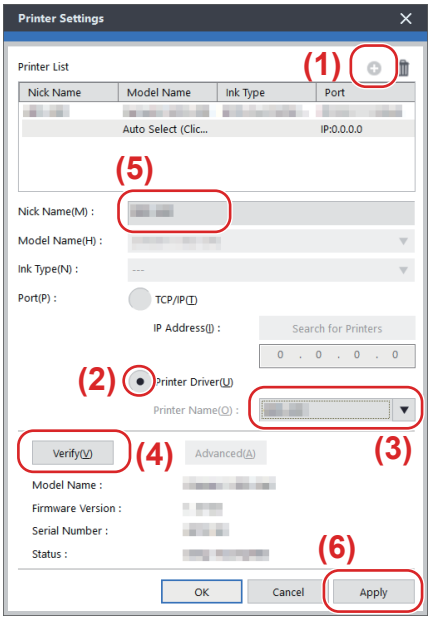
   (4) **Click [Verify].**

   Items such as the [**Model Name**], [**Firmware Version**], and [**Serial Number**] are displayed.

   (5) **Set the [Nickname].**

   If you do not set a nickname, the model name is displayed.

   (6) **Click [Apply].**



(7) **When the message [Do you want to install the virtual printer driver?] is displayed, click [Yes].**

This message does not indicate the printer driver to use in communication. It indicates the virtual printer driver to use when printing directly from the application.

(8) **When the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Yes] (or [Allow]).**

(9) **When the [Add Printer Wizard] window appears, click [Next].**

The information of the connected printer appears in the [**Printer List**].

(10) **Click [OK].**

4. **To add more printers, repeat Steps 1 to 3.**

5. **When you're done making all the settings, click [OK].**


Roland